

**M.A. English  
Semester-1  
MEG-103**

**Western Literary Criticism I**



### Message for Students

Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University is the only State Open University of Gujarat, established by the Government of Gujarat under Act No. 14 of 1994 passed by the Gujarat State Legislature, in memory of the architect of the Indian Constitution and Bharat Ratna Dr. Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar. The University stands seventh in terms of establishment among Open Universities in India.

The University offers more than 70 programmes, including Certificate, Diploma, Undergraduate, Postgraduate, and Doctoral degrees, with the objective of strengthening higher education across the state. On the occasion of the birth anniversary of Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar, the Government of Gujarat allotted a serene location and constructed a modern campus equipped with state-of-the-art facilities, named 'Jyotirmay' Parisar.

The Board of Management of the University has played a significant role in shaping the institution and continues to contribute to its development in all possible ways. Education is perceived as a vital capital investment, as it significantly contributes to improving the quality of human life.

In this context, one is reminded of the educational philosophy of Swami Vivekananda, who rightly stated:

*"We want the education by which character is formed, strength of mind is increased, the intellect is expanded, and by which one can stand on one's own feet."*

With the aim of providing quality, skill-based, and life-oriented education at the learners' doorstep, Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University remains committed to this vision of education. The University continuously strives to extend higher education to the wider population of Gujarat and to prepare learners to face day-to-day challenges, empowering them to lead meaningful lives for the upliftment of society and the nation at large.

Guided by its core motto 'स्वध्यायः परमं तपः', the University firmly believes in offering a rich and inclusive curriculum to its students. The University has developed lucid and learner-friendly self-learning materials to facilitate better understanding of subjects. In doing so, it has created opportunities for learners who are unable to pursue education through the regular or conventional mode.

For each subject, a dedicated Self Learning Material (SLM) team has been constituted, comprising Programme Advisory Committee members, content writers, and content and language reviewers, to effectively address the academic needs of learners. Keeping pace with the digital era, the University has launched its own digital learning platform, Omkar-e, to deliver education through Information and Communication Technology (ICT). In the near future, the University plans to introduce new online Certificate and Diploma programmes in areas such as Yoga, Naturopathy, Indian Classical Dance, and related disciplines, which may also be offered as electives.

Through these sustained efforts, Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University is steadily evolving into a centre of excellence in knowledge and education. We invite all stakeholders to join hands in this noble endeavour and collectively fulfil the dream of Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar of creating a harmonious and enlightened society.



**Prof. (Dr.) Ami Upadhyay**

Vice Chancellor

Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University

Ahmedabad

**Editor**

Prof. (Dr.) Ami Upadhyay  
Vice Chancellor & Director (School of Humanities and Social Sciences)  
Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University, Ahmedabad

**Co-ordinator**

Ms. Devarshi Modi  
Assistant Professor, Department of English, School of Humanities and Social Sciences,  
Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University, Ahmedabad

**Programme Advisory Committee**

Prof. (Dr.) Ami Upadhyay  
Prof. (Dr.) Kamal Mehta  
Prof. (Dr.) Attanu Bhattacharya  
Prof. (Dr.) Nigam Dave  
Prof. (Dr.) Dushyant Nimavat

**Reviewers**

Prof. Ami Upadhyay, Hon'ble Vice Chancellor, BAOU, Ahmedabad  
Professor B.S. Nimavat, Retired Professor, VD Kanakiya Arts College, Savarkundla  
Prof. (Dr.) Dushyant Nimavat, Professor, Gujarat University, Ahmedabad  
Dr. Ketan Gediya, Associate Professor, Smt. S. R. Mehta Arts College, Ahmedabad  
Dr. Deep Trivedi, Associate Professor, IITE, Gandhinagar

**Content Writers**

Prof. (Dr.) Dushyant Nimavat, Professor, Gujarat University, Ahmedabad  
Dr. Deep Trivedi, Associate Professor, IITE, Gandhinagar  
Dr. Reena Vaishnav, Assistant Professor, Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University, Ahmedabad  
Dr. Jay Jivani, Assistant Professor, Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University, Ahmedabad  
Dr. Saurav Vaishnav, Assistant Professor, St. Xeviers College, Ahmedabad.  
Dr. Ketan Gediya, Associate Professor, Smt. S. R. Mehta Arts College, Ahmedabad  
Dr. Perna M.  
Dr. Ushma Bhatt, Assistant Professor, Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University, Ahmedabad.

**Publisher**

Registrar,  
Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University, Ahmedabad

ISBN- 978-93-5598-834-8

All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced in any form, by mimeograph or any other means without permission in writing from Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University, Ahmedabad.



**Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar Open University**  
(Established by Government of Gujarat)

**MEG 103**  
**WESTERN LITERARY CRITICISM**

**BLOCK : 1 CLASSICAL FOUNDATION OF CRITICISM**

---

<b>Unit 1</b>	
<b>Introduction to Literary Criticism</b>	<b>01</b>

---

<b>Unit 2</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Plato: His attack on Poetry</b>	

---

<b>Unit 3</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>Aristotle's 'Poetics' an Overview</b>	

---

<b>Unit 4</b>	<b>48</b>
<b>Aristotle's 'Poetics': Text</b>	

---

**BLOCK : 2 EARLY CRITICAL TRADITION: SUBLIME,  
RENAISSANCE AND NEOCLASSICAL**

---

<b>Unit 5</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>Longinus: On the Sublime</b>	

---

<b>Unit 6</b>	<b>62</b>
<b>Sir Philip Sidney: An apology for Poetry</b>	

---

<b>Unit 7</b>	<b>76</b>
<b>John Dryden: Essay of Dramatic Poesy</b>	

---

**Unit 8**  
**Alexander Pope: An Essay on Criticism**

**93**

---

## **BLOCK : 3    NEOCLASSICAL TO ROMANTIC CRITICISM**

---

**Unit 9**  
**Dr. Samuel Johnson: A Preface to Shakespeare**

**107**

---

**Unit 10**  
**William Wordsworth: Preface to Lyrical Ballads (1802)**

**116**

---

**Unit 11**  
**S. T. Coleridge: Selections from Biographia Literaria**

**128**

---

**Unit 12**  
**Mary Wollstonecraft: A Vindication of the Rights of Woman**

**141**

---

## **BLOCK : 4    VICTORIAN TO MODERN CRITICISM**

---

**Unit 13**  
**Mathew Arnold: The Function of Criticism**

**154**

---

**Unit 14**  
**Aesthetic Movement by Walter Pater**

**169**

---

**Unit 15**  
**T. S. Eliot: Tradition and Individual Talent**

**184**

---

**:: STRUCTURE ::**

- 1.0 Learning Objectives**
- 1.1 Introduction**
- 1.2 Definition and Scope of Literary Criticism**
- 1.3 Literary Theory vs. Literary Criticism**
- 1.4 Functions and Purpose of Criticism**
- 1.5 Difference between Western Literary Criticism and Indian Literary Criticism**
- 1.6 Chronology of Western Literary Criticism**
  - 1.6.1 Classical Criticism: Plato and Aristotle**
  - 1.6.2 Hellenistic, Roman, and Medieval Criticism**
  - 1.6.3 Renaissance Humanism and Neoclassical Criticism**
  - 1.6.4 Enlightenment and the Rise of Aesthetic Theory**
  - 1.6.5 Romantic Criticism**
  - 1.6.6 Victorian and 19th-Century Criticism**
  - 1.6.7 Major 20th-Century Critics**
- 1.7 Western Literary Theory: An Overview**
  - 1.7.1 Formalism and New Criticism**
  - 1.7.2 Structuralism and Semiotics**
  - 1.7.3 Marxist Criticism**
  - 1.7.4 Psychoanalytic Criticism**
  - 1.7.5 Feminist and Gender Criticism**
  - 1.7.6 Poststructuralism and Deconstruction**
  - 1.7.7 Postmodern, Queer, and Postcolonial Criticism**
- 1.8 Conclusion**

---

## **1.0 OBJECTIVES**

---

By the end of this unit, learners will be able to:

1. Explain the meaning, scope, and purpose of literary criticism.
2. Distinguish clearly between literary theory and literary criticism and explain how they relate.
3. Trace the chronological development of Western literary criticism from Classical to Postmodern periods.
4. Identify major critics/theorists and summarise their key contributions across important movements and schools.
5. Explain how interdisciplinary fields (philosophy, linguistics, psychology, politics, etc.) have influenced literary theory and critical practice.
6. Apply basic critical terminology and selected theoretical lenses to interpret literary texts.

---

## **1.1 INTRODUCTION**

---

This chapter provides an introductory overview of literary criticism, the discipline concerned with interpreting, analysing, and evaluating literary texts. It explores the evolution of critical thought from classical times to the postmodern era, examining how literature has been understood in relation to aesthetics, morality, society, language, and identity. The chapter begins with definition and scope of literary criticism, followed by foundational debates by Plato and Aristotle, moves through significant periods such as Renaissance Humanism, Neoclassicism, Romanticism, and Victorian criticism, and then introduces the emergence of modern literary theory in the 20th century. Key theoretical approaches, such as Formalism, Structuralism, Marxism, Psychoanalysis, Feminism, Postcolonialism, and Queer Theory, are discussed in relation to their core ideas and leading thinkers. By tracing this intellectual journey, the chapter highlights the diverse and dynamic nature of literary criticism and its vital role in shaping how we read, interpret, and engage with literature.

---

## **1.2 DEFINITION AND SCOPE OF LITERARY CRITICISM**

---

Literary criticism is the disciplined practice of analysing, interpreting, evaluating, and discussing literature. It seeks to understand how literature works, what it means, and why it matters. Derived from the Greek word ‘kritikos,’ which means ‘the art of judgment,’ criticism involves more than fault-finding; it includes appreciation, explanation, and contextualization of literary works. Literary criticism studies various elements such as form, style, theme, structure, language, and historical context to offer insights into the text.

The scope of literary criticism is vast. It not only considers the intrinsic features of a text but also explores its relationship with the author, the reader, and the broader socio-political context. Over time, it has extended to include diverse perspectives like Feminism, Postcolonialism, Psychoanalysis, and Marxism, among others. Thus, literary criticism functions as a bridge between

literature and its readers, helping them engage with texts in a deeper and more informed manner.

---

### **1.3 LITERARY THEORY VS. LITERARY CRITICISM**

---

While often used interchangeably, literary theory and literary criticism are distinct but interrelated concepts. Literary theory refers to the systematic study of the nature of literature and the methods for analysing it. It provides the frameworks or lenses, such as Structuralism, Feminism, or Postcolonialism, through which texts can be understood and critiqued.

Literary criticism, on the other hand, is the actual practice of interpreting and evaluating literary works. It applies the insights provided by literary theory to specific texts. In simple terms, theory is the toolset, and criticism is the act of using those tools. For example, feminist theory offers concepts like patriarchy and gender roles, while feminist criticism applies these concepts to analyse how a particular novel portrays women.

---

### **1.4 FUNCTIONS AND PURPOSE OF CRITICISM**

---

The primary function of literary criticism is to enhance the understanding and appreciation of literature. It helps readers recognize the complexities of a text and offers various interpretations based on critical frameworks. Criticism also preserves and promotes literary heritage by identifying works of lasting artistic value.

Moreover, literary criticism serves an educational function. It trains students and readers to think critically, ask questions, and explore multiple meanings. It fosters intellectual engagement and nurtures the analytical faculties of readers. At a broader level, criticism can function as a form of cultural dialogue, reflecting and challenging societal values, beliefs, and ideologies.

---

### **1.5 DIFFERENCE BETWEEN WESTERN AND INDIAN LITERARY CRITICISM**

---

Western literary criticism has its roots in Greek philosophy, beginning with Plato and Aristotle. It evolved over centuries, absorbing changes brought by Humanism, Enlightenment Rationalism, Romanticism, and various 20th-century critical movements. It typically emphasizes textual analysis, aesthetic judgment, and philosophical inquiry.

Indian literary criticism, on the other hand, has its origins in classical Sanskrit poetics, such as *Natyashastra* by Bharata Muni and *Dhvanyaloka* by Anandavardhana. It focuses on concepts like Rasa (aesthetic emotion), Dhvani (suggestion), and Aaucitya (appropriateness). Indian criticism traditionally integrates literature with philosophy, spirituality, and ethics. While Western criticism often emphasises form and ideology, Indian criticism is more concerned with the emotional and moral impact of literature.

In the modern period, Indian criticism has increasingly engaged with global critical theories, yet it retains its distinct cultural and philosophical orientation.

---

### **1.6 CHRONOLOGY OF WESTERN LITERARY CRITICISM**

---

The development of Western literary criticism can be broadly traced through the following periods:



**Classical Criticism:** Initiated by Plato and Aristotle, this phase focused on mimesis (imitation), morality, and the structure of tragedy.

**Hellenistic, Roman, and Medieval Criticism:** Figures like Horace and Longinus emphasized decorum and the sublime. Medieval criticism leaned heavily on religious interpretation and allegory.

**Renaissance and Neoclassical Criticism:** Thinkers like Sidney, Dryden, and Pope revived classical ideals with renewed interest in reason, order, and didacticism.

**Enlightenment and Aesthetic Theory:** Emphasized rationality, taste, and the philosophical analysis of beauty. Kant, Burke, and Lessing contributed key ideas.

**Romantic Criticism:** Prioritized emotion, imagination, and the individual's response to nature and art. Wordsworth and Coleridge were central figures.

**Victorian and 19th Century Criticism:** Shifted toward historical and cultural contexts. Arnold introduced the touchstone method; Henry James focused on narrative technique.

**20th Century to Present:** Saw the emergence of various schools like Formalism, Structuralism, Psychoanalysis, Marxism, Feminism, Deconstruction, Postcolonialism, and Queer Theory; each bringing new methods and interpretations to literature.

### 1.6.1 Classical Criticism: Plato and Aristotle

Building upon the chronological overview of Western literary criticism, it is essential to begin a more detailed discussion with Classical Criticism, which laid the foundation for almost all subsequent critical traditions. The two towering figures of this era, Plato and Aristotle, shaped early thought on literature through their philosophical inquiries into art, truth, morality, and human emotion. Though both philosophers wrote in ancient Greece during the 4th century BCE, their views on literature, especially poetry and drama, differed significantly, offering contrasting but complementary frameworks for literary analysis.

Plato (c.428 BC, - 347 BC), a student of Socrates and the teacher of Aristotle, approached literature from a philosophical and moral perspective. His most influential ideas on literature appear in the *Republic*, particularly in Book X, where he discusses poetry within the context of his theory of the ideal state. For Plato, literature is a form of imitation, or *mimesis*. According to him, all artistic creations are imitations of the physical world, which is itself an imitation of the world of ideal Forms or eternal truths. Therefore, poetry, being an imitation of an imitation, is thrice removed from truth.

#### **Plato: The *Republic* (Book I), Literature, Justice, and Moral Education**

In Book I of The *Republic*, Plato, through the dialogue of Socrates, emphasizes the need for justice and order in the soul as the foundation for a just society. He criticizes the way poets and storytellers, especially Homer and Hesiod, present the gods as deceitful, vengeful, or morally flawed. Plato argues that such depictions corrupt the minds of young citizens and create confusion about virtue and justice. He advocates for regulating or censoring

literature in education, ensuring that only stories that promote moral integrity and rational behaviour are permitted.

### **Plato: The Republic (Book X), Theory of Imitation, and the Moralistic Function of Art**

Plato was especially critical of poets like Homer, who he believed misrepresented the gods and encouraged irrational emotions. He argued that poetry appeals to the baser instincts and stirs up emotions rather than guiding reason. From this viewpoint, he saw poetry as potentially harmful to the moral fabric of society, particularly in the education of the youth. Consequently, in his ideal republic, poets would be censored or even banished unless they promoted moral and rational values.

Thus, Plato's contribution to literary criticism lies in his moralistic function of art, the idea that literature must serve an ethical and educational purpose. While this perspective may appear restrictive, it provoked later thinkers to defend the autonomy and value of literature, a response most notably seen in the work of his student, Aristotle.

### **Aristotle: *Poetics*, Mimesis, Catharsis, Unity, and Tragedy**

Aristotle (384 - 322 BC) was an Ancient Greek philosopher and polymath. Aristotle's *Poetics* stands as the earliest surviving work of literary theory and a foundational text in Western criticism. While he agreed with Plato that literature is mimetic, Aristotle offered a more appreciative and analytical view. He defined *mimesis* not as mere copying but as a creative re-presentation of life that allows audiences to engage with universal truths through specific stories.

Aristotle's most influential contribution is his analysis of Tragedy. He defines Tragedy as "an imitation of an action that is serious, complete, and of a certain magnitude," which evokes pity and fear, leading to a process he famously termed catharsis, the emotional purgation or cleansing experienced by the audience. Unlike Plato, who saw emotional stimulation as dangerous, Aristotle believed that the controlled evocation of emotions through art could be beneficial and psychologically healing.

Aristotle also emphasized the importance of unity in structure. He identified the three unities of action, time, and place, although only the unity of action is clearly emphasized in the *Poetics*. According to him, a tragedy should have a single, cohesive plot with a clear beginning, middle, and end. Characters should be consistent and the plot should follow a logical sequence, often involving reversal (*peripeteia*) and recognition (*anagnorisis*), culminating in a moment of tragic resolution.

In his analysis of tragedy, Aristotle identifies six essential components: *plot*, *character*, *thought*, *diction*, *song*, and *spectacle*. He considers *plot* to be the soul of tragedy, as it organizes the events in a meaningful structure. *Character* refers to the moral and psychological makeup of the figures in the story. *Thought* involves the themes and messages conveyed. *Diction* relates to the language and expression. *Song* encompasses the musical elements, and *spectacle* refers to the visual aspects of the performance. While all these parts contribute to the effectiveness of a tragedy, Aristotle places the highest importance on plot.

Additionally, Aristotle outlines the characteristics of a tragic hero, who is typically a noble or high-born individual not wholly good or evil, but possessing a *hamartia*, or tragic flaw, often *hubris* (excessive pride), that leads to their downfall. This flaw, combined with fate and error in judgment, brings about the reversal of fortune and elicits pity and fear in the audience, achieving catharsis.

Furthermore, Aristotle distinguished between various literary genres, praised Homer for his epic artistry, and laid down the earliest principles of dramatic construction. His work not only validated the literary value of poetry and drama but also introduced critical tools such as classification, logical analysis, and aesthetic criteria, which have remained influential across centuries.

### **1.6.2 Hellenistic, Roman, and Medieval Criticism**

Following the foundational contributions of Plato and Aristotle to Classical Criticism, the next phase in the history of Western literary criticism emerged during the Hellenistic and Roman periods, later extending into the Medieval era. While Plato and Aristotle focused primarily on philosophy, form, and moral function, the succeeding critics added new dimensions such as aesthetic pleasure, rhetorical elegance, and religious interpretation. This period witnessed a gradual shift from purely philosophical inquiry to a more pragmatic and stylistic approach to literature. Key figures like Horace and Longinus shaped Roman and Hellenistic thought, while Medieval criticism was deeply rooted in religious traditions and scholastic methods.

#### **Horace: *Ars Poetica* – Didacticism and Decorum**

The Roman poet and critic Horace (65 - 8 BCE) made a lasting impact on literary criticism through his poetic treatise *Ars Poetica* (The Art of Poetry). Unlike the philosophical tone of Plato or the systematic analysis of Aristotle, Horace's approach was more practical and aimed at guiding poets and dramatists in their craft. *Ars Poetica* is written as an epistle in verse and offers advice on themes such as unity of plot, consistency of character, and appropriate language.

Horace emphasized didacticism, the belief that literature should both instruct and delight (*prodesse et delectare*). According to him, a successful poem or play is one that provides moral lessons while also engaging the reader or viewer. He also stressed the importance of decorum, or the appropriateness of style and content. For instance, the actions, language, and behaviour of characters must suit their age, gender, and social status.

Horace advocated for moderation and refinement in writing, discouraging excessive ornamentation or extreme emotional display. His emphasis on clarity, order, and balance deeply influenced Neoclassical critics centuries later, who echoed his ideals of restraint and harmony in art.

#### **Longinus: *On the Sublime* – Aesthetics and the Sublime**

A strikingly different yet equally influential figure from the Hellenistic period was Longinus (213 - 273 AD), whose treatise *On the Sublime* explored the emotional and aesthetic power of literature. While the exact identity and date of Longinus remain uncertain, his ideas are recognized for introducing aesthetic criticism focused on grandeur, elevation, and transcendence in literary expression.

Longinus argued that great literature moves readers not just through logic or moral instruction, but by creating a sense of awe and emotional intensity. This quality, which he called the sublime, arises from elements such as noble thoughts, elevated language, powerful emotions, and imaginative grandeur. According to him, the sublime can transport the audience beyond the ordinary and connect them with the eternal and universal.

Unlike Plato's suspicion of emotional stimulation, Longinus celebrated it as essential to literary greatness. His ideas paved the way for later Romantic critics who valued emotional resonance and individual expression. Moreover, Longinus emphasized the writer's genius, originality, and inspiration as sources of the sublime, making his work a significant departure from rigid rules-based criticism.

### **Medieval Criticism: Allegory, Biblical Exegesis, and Scholastic Influence**

With the rise of Christianity in Europe, Medieval literary criticism became closely tied to religious doctrine and theological interpretation. Literature, especially sacred texts like the *Bible*, was primarily read through the lens of allegory and moral instruction. The idea was that texts contained multiple layers of meaning; literal, moral, allegorical, and anagogical (spiritual or mystical); a method known as biblical exegesis.

Medieval critics believed that even secular literature should align with Christian values. The aim of reading and interpreting texts was not for aesthetic enjoyment but for spiritual enlightenment. Scholasticism, a method of critical thought developed in medieval universities, influenced literary analysis by emphasizing logical reasoning, categorization, and dialectical debate.

Key figures such as St. Augustine (354 - 430 AD) and Boethius (480 - 524 AD) contributed to the integration of classical philosophy with Christian theology. Augustine viewed literature as valuable only when it served religious ends, while Boethius bridged classical and Christian traditions through his philosophical works.

While Medieval criticism may seem rigid compared to earlier periods, it played a crucial role in preserving classical texts and in shaping the moral and allegorical traditions that would later influence Renaissance and theological readings of literature.

Thus, the period of Hellenistic, Roman, and Medieval criticism expanded the horizons of literary thought by introducing aesthetic depth, practical guidelines for writing, and religious interpretation. Horace contributed clarity and decorum, Longinus celebrated the emotional power of the sublime, and medieval scholars integrated literature with spiritual purpose. These developments laid the groundwork for the rich intellectual and artistic shifts that would follow in the Renaissance.

### **1.6.3 Renaissance Humanism and Neoclassical Criticism**

The critical traditions of the Hellenistic, Roman, and Medieval periods laid a strong foundation for the next major intellectual shift: the Renaissance, followed by the Neoclassical age. While earlier criticism had either focused on practical advice for poets (as with Horace), aesthetic elevation (as with Longinus), or theological interpretation (as in Medieval thought), this new era

emphasized a revival of classical learning, human reason, and artistic discipline. Renaissance Humanism brought renewed attention to the dignity of the human spirit and the moral value of literature, while Neoclassicism reinforced the importance of order, balance, and rationality in artistic creation. Key literary critics of these periods; Philip Sidney, John Dryden, and Alexander Pope; shaped evolving standards for evaluating literature, blending creativity with moral and aesthetic judgment.

### **Philip Sidney: *An Apology for Poetry* – Poetry as Moral and Imaginative**

Sir Philip Sidney (1554 - 1586), an English poet, soldier, and courtier, was one of the most influential literary figures of the Renaissance. His critical work *An Apology for Poetry* (also known as *The Defence of Poesy*) stands as one of the earliest and most powerful defences of poetry in the English language. Sidney wrote at a time when poetry was under attack from Puritan thinkers who considered it frivolous or morally corrupting. In response, Sidney argued passionately for the moral, educational, and imaginative power of poetry.

He emphasized that poetry was not only delightful but also useful in shaping virtue. According to Sidney, poetry combines the philosophical aim of teaching with the imaginative power of fiction, thereby inspiring readers to live more virtuous lives. He described poets as creators who “deliver a golden world” as opposed to the imperfect real world. Sidney thus offered a humanist vision of literature - one that believed in the potential of poetry to elevate the human mind and cultivate moral values. His argument drew heavily on classical models like Aristotle and Horace but was rooted in the ideals of Renaissance individualism and creativity.

### **John Dryden: Criticism as Judgment**

Moving into the 17th century, John Dryden (1631 - 1700) emerged as a major figure in the development of English literary criticism during the Neoclassical period. Dryden was not only a poet and dramatist but also the first prominent English critic to treat criticism as a serious intellectual activity. His essays, particularly *An Essay of Dramatic Poesy* (1668), reflect a thoughtful engagement with literary tradition, form, and purpose.

Dryden viewed criticism as a matter of reasoned judgment. He believed that critics should evaluate works with a sense of historical awareness and should appreciate different literary traditions while upholding principles of clarity, decorum, and unity. In his dialogues, he compared English drama with French and classical drama, suggesting that literary excellence can take different forms across cultures and times. For Dryden, criticism was not about rigid rule-following but about balancing tradition and innovation, taste and reason.

Dryden’s approach helped establish the practice of literary criticism as a disciplined form of discourse; analytical, comparative, and inclusive of different aesthetic standards. His work paved the way for more systematic critical thinking in the 18th century.

### **Alexander Pope: *Essay on Criticism* – Rules, Taste, and Decorum**

In the early 18th century, Alexander Pope (1688 - 1744) continued the Neoclassical tradition with his poetic treatise *An Essay on Criticism* (1711). Written in heroic couplets, the work blends poetic elegance with practical advice on reading and evaluating literature. Pope emphasized the need for

critics to have good taste, which he believed was formed through a balance of natural sense, learning, and exposure to classical models.

Pope stressed the importance of rules in literature; not as restrictions, but as guidelines derived from nature and refined by classical writers. He supported the ideals of decorum, where the style, tone, and subject of a work should be appropriately matched. Like Horace, he advocated for moderation, arguing that both excessive rigidity and careless innovation could harm artistic expression.

One of Pope's most famous lines "A little learning is a dangerous thing" – warns critics against superficial knowledge. For Pope, the ideal critic was not merely a fault-finder but a person of insight, humility, and refinement. His work represents a synthesis of reason, tradition, and poetic sensitivity, which became hallmarks of Neoclassical criticism.

In short, Renaissance Humanism and Neoclassicism marked a period of rediscovery and reform in literary criticism. Sidney celebrated poetry's moral and imaginative power; Dryden defined criticism as a rational and comparative exercise; and Pope urged critics to cultivate taste and respect artistic decorum. Together, they shaped a tradition that valued both creativity and discipline, laying the groundwork for later Enlightenment and Romantic thought.

#### **1.6.4 Enlightenment and the Rise of Aesthetic Theory**

The Renaissance and Neoclassical periods highlighted the importance of human reason, moral instruction, artistic balance, and decorum in literature. However, with the advent of the Enlightenment, critical thought began to explore deeper philosophical questions about the nature of beauty, emotion, and perception. This era, spanning the late 17th to the 18th century, is marked by a strong belief in rational inquiry and scientific observation, but it also laid the groundwork for emerging debates about imagination, feeling, and aesthetic experience. The Enlightenment thus set the stage for the development of aesthetic theory, blending philosophy, art, and literature. Thinkers like Edmund Burke, Immanuel Kant, Friedrich Schiller, and Gotthold Ephraim Lessing played pivotal roles in shaping modern understandings of art and its effects.

#### **Reason vs. Imagination**

One of the central tensions during the Enlightenment was the conflict between reason and imagination. Enlightenment thinkers valued rationality, order, and clarity, believing that human progress could be achieved through critical thinking and empirical knowledge. Literature and the arts, accordingly, were often expected to reflect these ideals by promoting truth, virtue, and intellectual clarity.

However, critics and philosophers also began to recognize that imagination and emotion play essential roles in human experience and artistic creation. Rather than viewing imagination as mere fantasy, they started to explore its power to evoke complex emotional responses and to express truths that reason alone could not capture. This shift marked the beginning of aesthetic theory; a

branch of philosophy concerned with the nature of beauty, taste, and the emotional power of art.

### **Edmund Burke and the Sublime**

One of the most influential figures in early aesthetic theory was the Irish philosopher Edmund Burke (1729 -1797). In his treatise *A Philosophical Enquiry into the Origin of Our Ideas of the Sublime and Beautiful* (1757), Burke drew a distinction between the beautiful and the sublime. While beauty is associated with harmony, smoothness, and pleasure, the sublime is linked to grandeur, awe, terror, and overwhelming emotion.

For Burke, the sublime arises from experiences that are vast, obscure, or powerful; such as stormy seas or towering mountains. These experiences create a sense of fear or astonishment, but when encountered from a safe distance, they become emotionally thrilling. His ideas helped critics and artists understand why certain forms of literature; especially epic poetry and tragedy; evoke intense, often unsettling responses. Burke's work also greatly influenced later Romantic thinkers, who embraced the sublime as a key feature of literary and artistic expression.

### **German Idealism: Kant and Schiller**

The German Enlightenment, or *Aufklärung*, brought forth deeper philosophical reflections on aesthetics, especially through the works of Immanuel Kant (1724 -1804) and Friedrich Schiller (1759 - 1805). Kant, in his *Critique of Judgment* (1790), developed a sophisticated theory of aesthetic judgment. He argued that the experience of beauty is disinterested; meaning that it does not serve practical purposes but is appreciated for its own sake. Kant emphasized that aesthetic judgment is subjective yet universal, since individuals may differ in taste, but still expect others to share their appreciation of beauty.

Kant also refined the idea of the sublime, describing it as an experience that exceeds our sensory and cognitive limits, yet uplifts the mind by connecting us to higher ideas like freedom and morality.

Friedrich Schiller, influenced by Kant, explored the connection between art, freedom, and human development. In his *Letters on the Aesthetic Education of Man* (1795), Schiller argued that exposure to beauty and art allows individuals to harmonize reason and emotion, leading to personal and social progress. He believed that aesthetic experience could play a transformative role in shaping ethical and enlightened citizens.

### **Lessing: *Laocoön* – Distinction between Poetry and Painting**

Another important Enlightenment thinker was Gotthold Ephraim Lessing (1729 - 1781), who made significant contributions to literary and art criticism. In his famous work *Laocoön: An Essay on the Limits of Painting and Poetry* (1766), Lessing explored the differences between visual and literary arts. He argued that painting represents a single moment in time and is spatial in nature, while poetry unfolds over time and is best suited to express action and emotion.

Lessing rejected the idea that the arts should imitate one another, asserting that each form has its own strengths and limitations. His ideas helped establish the independence of literary forms, encouraging critics to judge works based on

their medium-specific qualities rather than applying the same standards across all art.

The Enlightenment expanded the scope of literary criticism by introducing aesthetic theory, which examined how reason, imagination, and emotion intersect in the experience of art. Burke emphasized the emotional power of the sublime; Kant and Schiller explored the philosophical foundations of beauty and freedom; and Lessing clarified the unique qualities of literary and visual forms. These thinkers laid the groundwork for later developments in Romantic and modern criticism, where the focus would shift even more toward subjectivity, individuality, and creative expression.

### **1.6.5 Romantic Criticism**

The Enlightenment's exploration of aesthetics, reason, and the sublime laid an important philosophical foundation for the next major phase in literary criticism: the Romantic era. Emerging in the late 18th and early 19th centuries, Romantic criticism marked a strong reaction against the order, rationality, and rigid rules of Neoclassicism. Romantic thinkers and writers emphasized emotion, individual imagination, creativity, and a deep connection with nature. They believed that literature should arise from genuine feelings and that the role of the poet was not to follow established conventions, but to express profound truths through personal experience and visionary insight. Key contributors to this school of thought include William Wordsworth, Samuel Taylor Coleridge, and Percy Bysshe Shelley, whose critical writings helped redefine the purpose and power of poetry.

#### **William Wordsworth: *Preface to Lyrical Ballads* – Emotion and Nature**

William Wordsworth (1770 - 1850), one of the most celebrated poets of the Romantic movement, outlined his critical principles in the *Preface to Lyrical Ballads* (1800, expanded in 1802), a landmark text that challenged Neoclassical ideas about poetic diction, subject matter, and function. In the *Preface*, Wordsworth argued that poetry should express “the spontaneous overflow of powerful feelings,” recollected in tranquillity. He rejected the artificial language and elevated subjects preferred by earlier critics, instead promoting the use of everyday language and common life as suitable material for poetry.

Wordsworth believed that nature had a healing and moral influence on the human soul, and he viewed the poet as someone uniquely sensitive to emotional experiences and the natural world. He saw the purpose of poetry as nurturing empathy, reflection, and emotional insight, thus aligning literature closely with human feeling and moral understanding. His emphasis on sincerity, simplicity, and natural beauty helped shift the focus of criticism toward a more personal and emotional engagement with literature.

#### **Samuel Taylor Coleridge: *Biographia Literaria* – Imagination and Fancy**

While Wordsworth focused on feeling and simplicity, his close friend and collaborator Samuel Taylor Coleridge (1772 - 1834) brought a more philosophical and theoretical depth to Romantic criticism in his major prose work *Biographia Literaria* (1817). This text is part literary autobiography and part critical treatise, in which Coleridge discusses the nature of poetic imagination, creativity, and literary judgment.



Coleridge made a crucial distinction between imagination and fancy. He described *fancy* as a mechanical process that simply rearranges existing images and ideas, whereas *imagination* is a dynamic and creative faculty that unites opposites, transforms reality, and reveals deeper truths. He called this *esemplastic power*, meaning the ability to shape disparate elements into a unified whole.

Coleridge also offered nuanced critiques of Wordsworth's theories, agreeing with many of his ideas but questioning his views on language and poetic style. Through his exploration of metaphysics, psychology, and aesthetics, Coleridge provided a more philosophical foundation for Romantic ideals, particularly the central role of the imagination in both poetry and criticism.

### **Percy Bysshe Shelley: *A Defence of Poetry***

Another powerful voice in Romantic criticism was Percy Bysshe Shelley (1792 - 1822), whose essay *A Defense of Poetry* (written in 1821, published posthumously in 1840) presents a passionate argument for the transformative power of poetry. Shelley viewed poets as "the unacknowledged legislators of the world" – visionaries who, through their imagination, shape the moral and emotional consciousness of society.

For Shelley, poetry was not just an artistic form, but a mode of thought, a means of accessing truth and beauty beyond rational understanding. He emphasized the moral and spiritual potential of poetry, arguing that it fosters sympathy, compassion, and a deeper connection with humanity. His *Defense* echoes many themes from earlier Romantic criticism; emotion, intuition, idealism; but elevates the poet's role to that of a prophetic figure, capable of inspiring societal progress.

### **Rejection of Neoclassicism: Emotion and Imagination**

At its core, Romantic criticism represents a deliberate break from Neoclassical principles of reason, restraint, and adherence to fixed rules. Instead of focusing on formal perfection or classical imitation, Romantic critics celebrated subjective experience, emotional intensity, and the power of the imagination. They redefined poetry as a deeply personal and transformative art form, capable of revealing profound truths through the inner life of the poet.

This shift from external form to internal feeling reshaped literary criticism, allowing for greater interpretative freedom, and encouraging critics to explore psychological, emotional, and symbolic dimensions of literature. The Romantics laid the groundwork for later developments in psychological, expressive, and even postmodern theories of literature.

Romantic criticism placed the individual poet and inner emotion at the heart of literary creation. Wordsworth championed sincere feeling and the beauty of nature; Coleridge elevated imagination as the supreme creative power; and Shelley envisioned poetry as a moral and visionary force. Together, they reimagined literature as a means of deep personal and cultural transformation; marking one of the most significant turns in the history of literary criticism.

### **1.6.6 Victorian and 19th Century Criticism**

The Romantic period marked a shift toward imagination, emotion, and personal expression in literature. However, as the 19th century progressed, especially during the Victorian era, literary criticism began to respond to new

social, intellectual, and cultural challenges. The growing influence of science, industrialization, and historical inquiry encouraged critics to reconsider literature's role in society. While Romanticism celebrated the individual and the visionary, Victorian criticism sought a balance between aesthetic appreciation, moral seriousness, and historical understanding. Thinkers such as Matthew Arnold, Walter Pater, and Henry James helped shape a more modern and methodical approach to criticism. In addition, this period saw the emergence of historical and philological methods, which grounded literary study in rigorous research and scholarly tradition.

### **Matthew Arnold: *The Function of Criticism at the Present Time*, Touchstone Method**

Matthew Arnold (1822 - 1888) was one of the most influential literary critics of the Victorian period. In his essay *The Function of Criticism at the Present Time* (1865), Arnold argued that criticism should go beyond personal opinion or political agendas. Instead, it should aim to "see the object as in itself it really is." He believed that criticism should be a disinterested and intellectual pursuit that helps society move towards cultural refinement.

Arnold viewed literature as a means of moral and spiritual development. He saw the critic's role as that of a cultural guide, someone who exposes readers to the best that has been thought and said. In this context, he introduced the Touchstone Method, which involved comparing passages from contemporary works with established masterpieces; such as those of Homer, Shakespeare, or Dante; to judge literary quality. According to Arnold, great literature should exhibit high seriousness, emotional depth, and universal values.

His emphasis on objective standards, moral purpose, and cultural enrichment reflected Victorian ideals of order and progress. Arnold's work helped elevate criticism to a more serious and scholarly discipline, moving beyond mere taste or entertainment.

### **Walter Pater: Aestheticism and the Pursuit of Beauty**

In contrast to Arnold's moral emphasis, Walter Pater (1839 - 1894) championed the philosophy of Aestheticism, which held that art should be valued for its beauty and emotional impact, rather than for its moral or educational function. Pater's most famous work, *Studies in the History of the Renaissance* (1873), encouraged readers to experience art in terms of impression, mood, and sensual detail.

Pater is best known for his claim that art should be approached as an intense and fleeting experience, and that the critic's task is to capture and communicate that experience. He famously wrote that one should "burn with a hard, gemlike flame" and live life through a series of passionate encounters with beauty.

While some critics saw Aestheticism as indulgent or escapist, Pater's work laid the groundwork for modernist and impressionist criticism, which emphasized subjectivity, nuance, and the individuality of perception. His influence can be seen in the later works of Oscar Wilde and other members of the Decadent movement.

### **Henry James: *The Art of Fiction***

Henry James (1843 - 1916), though primarily known as a novelist, made significant contributions to literary criticism through his essays and reviews. In *The Art of Fiction* (1884), James argued that fiction is a serious artistic form, deserving of the same critical attention as poetry or drama. He emphasized that the novelist should have the freedom to explore life in all its complexity, without being restricted by moral or structural conventions.

James believed that the quality of a novel depended on its treatment of experience; how well it rendered the richness, variety, and subtlety of life. He also introduced the idea of the “central consciousness”, or the way in which a story could be filtered through the perceptions of a single character, shaping narrative voice and structure.

James’s work contributed to the development of literary realism and helped prepare the ground for 20th-century narrative theory, particularly ideas around point of view, interiority, and authorial control.

### **Rise of Historical and Philological Methods**

Alongside these individual critics, the 19th century also saw the growth of more academic and research-based approaches to literature. Scholars began to study texts through historical, linguistic, and comparative lenses. Philology, the study of language in historical texts, became central to university literary studies, particularly in Germany and Britain. Critics examined the origins, evolutions, and cultural contexts of literary works, seeking to understand not only the text itself but also its relation to history, tradition, and language.

This methodical and evidence-based approach led to the professionalization of literary studies and laid the groundwork for modern literary scholarship. It helped establish literature as a legitimate academic discipline and encouraged rigorous, text-focused analysis rooted in historical understanding.

On the whole, Victorian and 19th-century criticism marked a turning point toward modern literary thought. Arnold emphasized moral and cultural refinement, Pater celebrated aesthetic experience, and James elevated fiction as a serious art form. The rise of historical and philological methods added scholarly depth to the study of literature. Together, these developments shaped a more balanced, analytical, and diverse field of literary criticism; one that would evolve further in the 20th century with the emergence of formalist and theoretical schools.

#### **1.6.7 Major 20th Century Critics**

The developments in Victorian and 19th-century criticism; with its emphasis on moral evaluation, cultural refinement, and scholarly analysis; created a foundation for the emergence of more specialized and theoretical approaches in the early 20th century. This period witnessed the rise of modernist literature and a changing intellectual climate that demanded new ways of reading and interpreting texts. As a result, critics began to explore literature through psychological, formal, and cultural perspectives, paving the way for literary theory. Among the most influential figures in this transitional phase were T. S. Eliot, I. A. Richards, and F. R. Leavis, who reshaped English literary criticism with their innovative ideas and lasting contributions.

#### **T. S. Eliot**

T. S. Eliot (1888 - 1965), a major poet and critic of the modernist movement, brought a sense of intellectual rigor and historical depth to literary criticism. In his essay *Tradition and the Individual Talent* (1919), Eliot argued that a poet must be aware of the entire tradition of literature and write with an understanding of how their work fits into that continuum. He emphasized the idea of the impersonality of poetry, suggesting that great poets do not merely express personal feelings but transform them through craft and tradition. Eliot also introduced the concept of the objective correlative - a set of objects, situations, or events that evoke a particular emotion in the reader, rather than stating the emotion directly.

### **I. A. Richards**

I. A. Richards (1893 - 1979) is often regarded as a pioneer of practical criticism and one of the founders of New Criticism. In his works *Principles of Literary Criticism* (1924) and *Practical Criticism* (1929), Richards emphasized close reading and the scientific analysis of reader response. He focused on how literature affects the reader emotionally and intellectually and aimed to remove subjective or moral judgments from criticism. Richards also explored how meaning is created through language, tone, and ambiguity. His work laid the groundwork for later formalist approaches that focused on textual analysis rather than historical or biographical context.

### **F. R. Leavis**

F. R. Leavis (1895 - 1978) continued and expanded many of Richards' ideas but placed greater emphasis on moral seriousness and literary tradition. Through his journal *Scrutiny*, Leavis promoted a canon of English literature that he believed upheld human values and cultural continuity. He was a strong advocate of close reading but also insisted that literature should be judged for its ethical and social relevance. Leavis viewed literature as essential to the moral and cultural health of society and positioned the critic as a guardian of literary and cultural standards.

Together, Eliot, Richards, and Leavis marked a shift from 19th-century generalist criticism to a more disciplined, text-focused, and evaluative practice, which would influence the emergence of literary theory in the mid-20th century.

---

## **1.7 WESTERN LITERARY THEORY: AN OVERVIEW**

---

The contributions of 20th-century critics like T. S. Eliot, I. A. Richards, and F. R. Leavis played a crucial role in professionalizing literary criticism by promoting close reading, attention to form, and critical judgment. Their efforts laid the foundation for the emergence of Western literary theory, which took a more conceptual and interdisciplinary turn in the mid to late 20th century. Unlike traditional criticism, which often focused on the quality or moral impact of literature, literary theory asked fundamental questions about meaning, language, identity, and ideology. It shifted the focus from evaluating literature to understanding how it works and how it participates in larger systems of thought.

Western literary theory developed as a diverse and evolving field, influenced by philosophy, linguistics, Psychoanalysis, Marxism, Feminism, and Cultural Studies. It offered a range of theoretical approaches, each providing a distinct

lens through which to interpret texts. These frameworks did not replace criticism but expanded its scope, encouraging readers and scholars to examine not just what a text says, but how it says it and why.

One of the earliest schools of theory, Formalism; particularly Russian Formalism and Anglo-American New Criticism; focused on the internal structure of texts, advocating for close reading and textual autonomy. This was followed by Structuralism and Semiotics, which borrowed ideas from linguist Ferdinand de Saussure (1857 - 1913) to analyse literature as part of a broader system of signs.

Subsequent developments included Marxist theory, which examined class struggle, ideology, and power structures in literature; and Psychoanalytic criticism, which explored unconscious desires and psychological conflict within texts and authors. Feminist and Gender criticism challenged patriarchal narratives and examined how literature constructs gender identities.

The late 20th century saw the rise of Poststructuralism, Deconstruction, and Discourse Theory, which questioned the stability of language and meaning. Thinkers like Jacques Derrida and Michel Foucault argued that texts are open to multiple interpretations and that language is shaped by power, history, and ideology.

Later movements such as Postcolonial, Queer, and Postmodern theories further broadened the field, exploring themes of identity, marginality, resistance, and cultural hybridity.

In essence, Western literary theory transformed the study of literature into a multidisciplinary and dynamic field, encouraging readers to think critically about texts and their relation to language, society, and the self.

---

### **1.7.1 FORMALISM AND NEW CRITICISM**

---

As discussed in the previous section, the emergence of literary theory in the 20th century marked a shift from evaluative criticism to more structured and analytical approaches. Among the earliest and most influential movements within this shift were Formalism and New Criticism. These schools of thought prioritized the text itself; its language, structure, and form; over historical background, authorial intention, or reader response. Their central idea was that a literary work should be studied as an autonomous object, complete in itself and independent of external influences.

#### **Russian Formalism: Shklovsky and Defamiliarization**

Russian Formalism, which emerged in the 1910s and 1920s, was one of the first movements to advocate for a scientific and systematic study of literature. Formalists like Viktor Shklovsky (1893 - 1984), Roman Jakobson (1896 - 1982), and others focused on how literary texts use language in unique and artistic ways, different from everyday communication.

Shklovsky introduced the important concept of defamiliarization (*ostranenie*), which refers to the way literature makes the familiar seem strange in order to force readers to see it with fresh eyes. According to him, the purpose of art is to disrupt habitual perception and make ordinary experiences feel new and vivid. This idea highlighted the literary techniques – such as metaphor, rhythm, and narrative structure – that give literature its distinctive character.

## **Anglo-American New Criticism: Cleanth Brooks and W. K. Wimsatt**

In the English-speaking world, a similar approach developed in the 1930s and 1940s, known as New Criticism. Prominent figures like Cleanth Brooks (1906 - 1994), John Crowe Ransom (1888 - 1974), and W. K. Wimsatt (1907 - 1975) emphasized close reading, a method of detailed textual analysis that focuses on the formal elements of a work - imagery, tone, paradox, irony, and structure.

New Critics argued that literary meaning arises from the internal tensions and unities within the text, not from the author's intention or the reader's emotional response. Wimsatt and Monroe Beardsley (1915 - 1985) introduced the concepts of the intentional fallacy (the error of basing interpretation on the author's intended meaning) and the affective fallacy (the error of judging a work by its emotional effect on the reader).

Overall, Formalism and New Criticism laid the foundation for modern literary analysis by promoting textual autonomy and close reading. Their focus on form and language helped establish literature as a rigorous field of study, paving the way for later theoretical developments.

### **1.7.2 Structuralism and Semiotics**

While Formalism and New Criticism emphasized close reading and the internal structure of texts, they largely treated literature in isolation. The next major development – Structuralism and Semiotics – broadened literary analysis by connecting literature to larger systems of meaning. These approaches drew heavily from linguistics and anthropology, viewing texts not as individual expressions but as part of a broader network of cultural signs and codes. Structuralism sought to uncover the deep structures that govern how stories are formed and understood across different cultures and periods.

### **Ferdinand de Saussure: Sign, Signifier, and Signified**

The foundation of structuralist thought lies in the work of Ferdinand de Saussure (1857 - 1913), a Swiss linguist. He introduced a theory of language based on the idea that meaning arises not from a direct link between words and things, but from the relationship between signs. A sign consists of two parts: the signifier (the sound or written word) and the signified (the concept or meaning it represents). According to Saussure, language is a system of differences, where meaning depends on contrast with other signs rather than any fixed reference. This idea became central to semiotics, the study of signs and symbols, and laid the groundwork for applying linguistic analysis to literature and culture.

### **Claude Lévi-Strauss and Narrative Myths**

Claude Lévi-Strauss (1908 - 2009), an anthropologist, applied structuralist methods to the study of myths. He argued that myths from different cultures share common underlying structures, especially binary oppositions such as life/death, good/evil, or nature/culture. These oppositions are used to organize human thought and are repeated in various narrative forms. His work showed that stories are not just artistic expressions but reflect universal mental patterns.

## **Roland Barthes: Death of the Author**

Roland Barthes (1915 - 1980), a French literary theorist, expanded structuralist ideas into cultural criticism. In his famous essay *The Death of the Author* (1967), Barthes argued that a text's meaning does not come from the author's intention but from the interaction between the reader and the language of the text. For Barthes, the author is no longer the sole source of meaning; instead, the reader becomes active in producing interpretation.

## **Greimas, Genette, and Narrative Codes**

Other important structuralist thinkers include A. J. Greimas (1917 - 1992), who developed models for analysing narrative structure, and Gérard Genette (1930 - 2018), who contributed to narratology by distinguishing elements such as story, discourse, and focalization (point of view). Their work provided tools for examining how stories are constructed and how meaning is shaped by narrative techniques.

In brief, Structuralism and Semiotics transformed literary studies by linking texts to systems of language, myth, and culture. These approaches emphasized that literature is shaped by deeper structures and that understanding these patterns can reveal how meaning is generated and shared.

### **1.7.3 Marxist Criticism**

While Structuralism and Semiotics focused on the internal structures of language and myth, Marxist Criticism shifted attention to the social, political, and economic forces that shape literature and its interpretation. Drawing from the ideas of Karl Marx (1818 - 1883) and Friedrich Engels (1820 - 1895), this approach views literature not simply as art, but as a product of material conditions and power relations. It emphasizes that literature reflects, reinforces, or resists the dominant ideologies of its time.

At the core of Marxist theory is the distinction between the base (the economic structure of society) and the superstructure (its culture, institutions, and ideologies). According to Marx and Engels, the base influences the superstructure, meaning that literature and art are shaped by the economic realities of their historical context. This leads to the idea of historical materialism, where literature is studied in relation to the social and class conditions in which it was produced.

Later Marxist thinkers expanded this framework. Georg Lukács (1885 - 1971) emphasized the concept of totality and argued that great literature reveals the broader social dynamics of its age. Antonio Gramsci introduced the idea of cultural hegemony, referring to the way ruling classes maintain power not just through force, but by controlling cultural and intellectual life. Louis Althusser (1918 - 1990) redefined ideology as a system that shapes individuals' identities and perceptions, influencing how they experience reality.

In the late 20th century, Terry Eagleton (1943 - ) emerged as a leading Marxist critic. In works like *Literary Theory: An Introduction* (1983), he explored how literature both expresses and challenges dominant ideologies. He stressed that literature is never neutral; it always relates to class struggle and the ideological battles of society.

In essence, Marxist criticism urges readers to see literature as deeply embedded in history and power, and to ask how texts reflect or resist the inequalities of the world they come from.

#### **1.7.4 Psychoanalytic Criticism**

While Marxist Criticism focused on literature's relationship with society, economy, and ideology, Psychoanalytic Criticism turned inward to explore the unconscious mind, personal desire, and psychological conflict within texts. Rooted in the theories of Sigmund Freud (1856 - 1939), this approach views literature as a space where hidden fears, fantasies, and anxieties are expressed; often in disguised or symbolic forms.

Freud introduced key concepts that influenced literary theory, such as the Oedipus complex, the unconscious, and dream theory. He believed that human behaviour is driven by unconscious desires and repressed memories. Just as dreams reveal the workings of the unconscious, so too does literature, through its symbols, plots, and characters. Psychoanalytic critics analyse how these elements reflect inner conflicts, forbidden desires, or unresolved tensions in the psyche of the author, character, or reader.

Carl Jung (1875 - 1961), a follower and later a critic of Freud, developed his own ideas. He introduced the concept of the collective unconscious, a shared layer of the human mind filled with archetypes; universal symbols such as the Hero, the Mother, or the Shadow. Jungian criticism looks for these recurring patterns in literature, believing that they tap into deep-rooted myths and human experiences.

Jacques Lacan, (1901 - 1981) a French psychoanalyst, reinterpreted Freud through the lens of language and philosophy. He introduced the mirror stage, where the child first forms a sense of self, and the symbolic order, the realm of language and social norms. Lacanian critics often read literature as a site of psychological fragmentation, where language reveals the subject's divided identity.

Psychoanalytic criticism thus treats literature as a symptom or fantasy, revealing hidden truths about the human mind. It remains a powerful tool for exploring the emotional, symbolic, and unconscious dimensions of literary texts.

#### **1.7.5 Feminist and Gender Criticism**

While Psychoanalytic Criticism explored the inner workings of the human mind and unconscious desire, Feminist and Gender Criticism shifted attention to how literature reflects and shapes power dynamics based on gender. This approach emerged strongly in the 1960s and 1970s alongside broader feminist movements, aiming to challenge the male-cantered perspectives that had long dominated literary traditions. Feminist critics examine how texts portray women, question gender roles, and highlight voices that have historically been silenced.

A key foundational work is Virginia Woolf's (1882 - 1941) *A Room of One's Own* (1929), in which she argues that for a woman to write, she needs economic independence and personal space. Woolf critiques the absence of women in literary history and imagines how conditions of inequality limit creativity and expression.



Later thinkers like Simone de Beauvoir (1908 - 1986), in *The Second Sex* (1949), examined how women have been culturally defined as ‘the Other,’ while Kate Millett (1934 - 2017) analyzed literature through the lens of sexual politics, revealing how patriarchal power structures operate within texts. Elaine Showalter (1941 - ) introduced the concept of Gynocriticism, which focuses on studying women’s writing on its own terms, exploring themes, language, and literary history from a female dominant perspective.

Feminist and gender critics also introduced the idea that gender is a social construct, not simply a biological fact. This view opened up space for the study of non-binary and fluid identities in literature. French theorists such as Hélène Cixous (1937 - ) promoted *écriture féminine*, or ‘feminine writing,’ which emphasizes the body, emotion, and difference as modes of expression that challenge masculine forms.

Feminist and Gender Criticism has transformed literary studies by questioning norms, recovering lost voices, and redefining authorship and identity, making literature more inclusive and critically aware of gendered power relations.

### **1.7.6 Poststructuralism and Deconstruction**

While Feminist and Gender Criticism questioned fixed ideas about identity and power, Poststructuralism and Deconstruction took this questioning further by challenging the very stability of language, meaning, and truth in literature. Emerging in the late 20th century as a response to Structuralism, poststructuralist thinkers argued that meaning is not fixed or singular, but rather fluid, multiple, and open to interpretation.

A central figure in this movement is Jacques Derrida (1930 - 2004), who introduced the concept of ‘difference’; a French term that suggests both difference and deferral. According to Derrida, meaning in language is never complete or final because each word relies on other words for its definition. This idea led to his method of deconstruction, which involves analysing texts to show how they undermine their own assumptions and contain internal contradictions. Deconstruction does not destroy meaning but reveals its complexity and instability.

Michel Foucault (1926-1984) added to poststructuralist thought by examining how discourse; the way knowledge is structured and communicated; produces and maintains power. He argued that what we consider ‘truth’ is often shaped by historical and institutional forces. His concept of power/knowledge shows that language is never neutral; it reflects the interests of those in control.

Roland Barthes (1915 - 1980), who moved from structuralism to poststructuralism, introduced the ideas of textuality and intertextuality. He emphasized that a text is not a closed, isolated work but a network of references to other texts and cultural codes. In his essay *The Death of the Author*, Barthes argued that the author’s intentions should not limit a reader’s interpretation.

Poststructuralism and Deconstruction thus transformed literary criticism by highlighting the uncertainty of meaning and encouraging a more active, critical engagement with texts. They opened up literature to multiple perspectives, reshaping how we understand language, power, and interpretation.

### **1.7.7 Postmodern, Queer, and Postcolonial Criticism**

The poststructuralist turn in literary theory, with its focus on the instability of language and meaning, laid the groundwork for further developments in Postmodern, Queer, and Postcolonial Criticism. These approaches, which gained prominence in the late 20th century, question the dominance of fixed identities, single narratives, and traditional hierarchies. They explore how literature and culture are shaped by power, politics, and social constructs, and they call for a more inclusive and pluralistic way of reading and interpreting texts.

#### **Postmodern Criticism**

Postmodernism challenges the belief in objective truth, linear history, and stable meaning. Thinkers like Jean-François Lyotard (1924 - 1998), Jean Baudrillard (1929 - 2007), and Fredric Jameson (1934 - 2024) played key roles in shaping postmodern theory. Lyotard famously described postmodernism as “incredulity toward metanarratives,” meaning a scepticism toward large, universal explanations; whether political, religious, or scientific. Postmodern literature often reflects this scepticism through fragmented narratives, unreliable narrators, and intertextuality.

Baudrillard introduced the concept of simulacra, arguing that in the age of media and technology, we often encounter images and representations that no longer refer to any real original. Reality becomes replaced by simulations. This influences literature by blurring the boundaries between reality and fiction. Fredric Jameson, in his analysis of postmodernism as the cultural logic of late capitalism, pointed to the use of pastiche – the imitation or collage of different styles without any deep historical or political engagement. For postmodern critics, literature becomes a space where meaning is unstable, history is rewritten, and multiple voices coexist.

#### **Postcolonial Criticism**

Postcolonial criticism examines how literature represents the effects of colonialism, including displacement, identity conflict, and cultural domination. Edward Said’s (1935 - 2003) groundbreaking book *Orientalism* (1978) exposed how Western literature and scholarship portrayed the East as exotic, irrational, and inferior, constructing a binary between the ‘civilized’ West and the ‘uncivilized’ East. Said argued that such representations were not neutral but deeply political.

Homi Bhabha (1949 - ) introduced key concepts such as hybridity, mimicry, and ambivalence, showing how colonized subjects negotiate identity in the face of cultural domination. He emphasized that colonial identities are not fixed but constantly shifting. Gayatri Chakravorty Spivak (1942 - ), another major postcolonial theorist, focused on the voice of the subaltern—the socially and politically marginalized groups who are often excluded from dominant discourse. Her essay “Can the Subaltern Speak?” (1988) questioned whether these voices could ever truly be heard within colonial or postcolonial structures.

Postcolonial criticism seeks to recover suppressed histories, critique imperialist ideologies, and explore the complexities of cultural identity, resistance, and hybridity.

## Queer Criticism

Queer theory developed out of feminist theory and poststructuralist thought. It challenges traditional views of gender and sexuality as natural or fixed. Influenced by Judith Butler (1956 - ), queer theorists argue that gender is performative; not something we are, but something we do through repeated acts shaped by social norms. Butler's work questions binary categories like male/female or heterosexual/homosexual, suggesting that such divisions are limiting and politically constructed.

Eve Kosofsky Sedgwick (1950 - 2009) expanded the field by analysing how literature encodes assumptions about desire, identity, and sexual norms. Queer theory examines how texts represent or resist heteronormativity, and it highlights fluidity, ambiguity, and nonconformity in gender and sexual identity.

Together, Postmodern, Postcolonial, and Queer Criticism have made literary studies more inclusive, critical, and diverse. They encourage readers to question dominant narratives, explore marginal voices, and embrace the multiplicity of meanings and identities within texts and cultures. These approaches reflect the ongoing evolution of literary theory in response to global, cultural, and social changes.

---

## 1.8 CONCLUSION

---

The journey through the history and evolution of literary criticism reveals how rich and dynamic the field has been across time. From the philosophical inquiries of Plato and Aristotle in Classical Criticism to the moral and aesthetic concerns of the Victorian and 19th-century critics, literary thought has continually responded to changing cultural, intellectual, and social contexts. Each critical era brought new questions and approaches, reshaping how literature is read, interpreted, and valued.

The transition from traditional criticism to modern literary theory marked a significant turning point. While earlier critics focused on judgment, beauty, and morality, 20th-century thinkers began to explore deeper structural, ideological, psychological, and cultural dimensions of texts. The rise of Formalism, Structuralism, and Semiotics introduced a scientific and linguistic lens to literature, while Marxist, Psychoanalytic, and Feminist theories addressed issues of power, identity, and human experience.

Further developments in Poststructuralism, Deconstruction, and the theories that followed – Postmodernism, Postcolonialism, and Queer Criticism – challenged the very foundations of meaning, authorship, and truth. These approaches emphasized multiplicity, fluidity, and resistance to dominant ideologies, making literary studies more inclusive and critically engaged with the world.

Throughout this chapter, it has become clear that literary criticism is not a fixed body of rules but an evolving dialogue. It is a way of understanding not just literature, but also the human condition, society, and culture. As each critical approach offers its own lens, students and readers are invited to engage with texts more deeply, to think critically, and to appreciate the many voices and interpretations that literature can contain.

In essence, literary criticism enriches our reading experience. It helps us move beyond the surface of a text to uncover the meanings, questions, and possibilities that lie beneath; making it an essential and transformative part of literary study.

- **Check Your Progress**

**1. Choose the correct answer from the options given below each of the following statements:**

1. In *The Republic* Book X, Plato criticizes poets for promoting \_\_\_\_\_ rather than rational values.

a) national pride      b) emotional excess      c) scientific truth

**Answer: b) emotional excess**

2. Aristotle defined tragedy as an imitation of an action that evokes \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

a) anger and love      b) pity and fear      c) confusion and clarity

**Answer: b) pity and fear**

3. The six components of tragedy according to Aristotle are plot, character, thought, diction, song, and \_\_\_\_\_.

a) chorus      b) rhyme      c) spectacle

**Answer: c) spectacle**

4. Horace emphasized that poetry should both instruct and \_\_\_\_\_.

a) challenge      b) delight      c) criticize

**Answer: b) delight**

5. Longinus's theory of the sublime focuses on the ability of literature to evoke a sense of \_\_\_\_\_.

a) logic      b) awe      c) tradition

**Answer: b) awe**

6. Sidney's *An Apology for Poetry* defends poetry for its moral and \_\_\_\_\_ value.

a) political      b) imaginative      c) religious

**Answer: b) imaginative**

7. Dryden believed that criticism should be based on \_\_\_\_\_ judgment.

a) historical      b) emotional      c) reasoned

**Answer: c) reasoned**

8. Pope's *Essay on Criticism* emphasized the importance of taste, decorum, and \_\_\_\_\_.

a) originality      b) rules      c) rebellion

**Answer: b) rules**

9. Edmund Burke distinguished between the beautiful and the \_\_\_\_\_ in his aesthetic theory.

- a) grotesque      b) sublime      c) natural

**Answer: b) sublime**

10. According to Kant, aesthetic judgment is both subjective and \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) universal   b) cultural      c) fixed

**Answer: a) universal**

11. Wordsworth described poetry as the spontaneous overflow of powerful \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) symbols   b) images      c) feelings

**Answer: c) feelings**

12. Coleridge distinguished between fancy and \_\_\_\_\_ in his theory of imagination.

- a) intuition   b) genius      c) imagination

**Answer: c) imagination**

13. Formalism and New Criticism emphasize close reading and the \_\_\_\_\_ of the text.

- a) historical background   b) autonomy   c) genre

**Answer: b) autonomy**

14. Marxist criticism sees literature as shaped by the economic base and expressing \_\_\_\_\_ ideologies.

- a) religious   b) class      c) romantic

**Answer: b) class**

15. Roland Barthes declared the “Death of the Author” to shift focus from authorial intent to the role of the \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) society   b) text      c) reader

**Answer: c) reader**

**2. Briefly answer the following questions:**

1. What is the difference between literary theory and literary criticism?
2. How does Plato view the role of poetry in society as discussed in *The Republic*?
3. What is Aristotle’s concept of mimesis, and how does it differ from Plato’s?
4. What are the key ideas in Horace’s *Ars Poetica* regarding decorum and didacticism?
5. What does Longinus mean by the ‘sublime,’ and how is it significant in literary experience?

6. What are the main arguments made by Philip Sidney in *An Apology for Poetry*?
7. How does Dryden define the role of criticism in *An Essay of Dramatic Poesy*?
8. What does Alexander Pope emphasize in *An Essay on Criticism* regarding rules and taste?
9. How does Edmund Burke differentiate between the beautiful and the sublime? What is Immanuel Kant's idea of disinterested aesthetic judgment?
10. How does Wordsworth define poetry in the *Preface to Lyrical Ballads*?
11. What distinction does Coleridge make between imagination and fancy in *Biographia Literaria*?
12. How does I. A. Richards contribute to the development of close reading in literary criticism?
13. What are the basic principles of Formalism and New Criticism regarding textual autonomy?
14. How does Marxist criticism explain the relationship between literature, class struggle, and ideology?

### 3. Answer the following questions in detail:

1. Discuss the major differences between Classical Criticism and Romantic Criticism with reference to key thinkers and their ideas. How did the focus of literary criticism shift during these periods?
2. Explain the significance of Formalism and New Criticism in shaping modern literary analysis. How did these schools of thought change the role of the reader and the text in interpretation?
3. Evaluate the contributions of T. S. Eliot, I. A. Richards, and F. R. Leavis in the development of 20th-century literary criticism. In what ways did their ideas lay the groundwork for modern literary theory?
4. How do Feminist and Gender Criticism challenge traditional literary canons and interpretations? Discuss key concepts such as gender as a social construct, gynocriticism, and *écriture féminine* with reference to major theorists.
5. Discuss the impact of Poststructuralism and Postmodernism on literary theory. How do critics like Derrida, Foucault, and Barthes question traditional notions of meaning, authorship, and textual authority?

### ❖ Reference

- Abrams, M. H., and Geoffrey Galt Harpham. *A Glossary of Literary Terms*. 11th ed., Cengage, 2015.
- Atkins, J. W. H. *Literary Criticism in Antiquity*. 2 vols., Methuen & Co., 1934.
- Barry, Peter. *Beginning Theory: An Introduction to Literary and Cultural Theory*. 4th ed., Manchester University Press, 2017.
- Blamires, Harry. *A History of Literary Criticism*. Macmillan, 1991.

- Daiches, David. *Critical Approaches to Literature*. Orient BlackSwan, 2005.
- Das, Bijay Kumar. *A History of Literary Criticism: From Plato to the Present*. 2nd ed., Oxford University Press India, 2023.
- Das, Bijay Kumar. *Twentieth Century Literary Criticism*. 7th ed., Atlantic Publishers & Distributors, 2021.
- Eagleton, Terry. *Literary Theory: An Introduction*. 3rd ed., Wiley-Blackwell, 2008.
- Habib, M. A. R. *A History of Literary Criticism: From Plato to the Present*. Blackwell Publishing, 2005.
- Nagarajan, M. S. *English Literary Criticism and Theory: An Introductory History*. Orient BlackSwan, 2006.
- Prasad B., G. S. Balarama. *An Introduction to Literary Criticism and Theory*. Authorspress, 2013.
- Sethuraman, V. S., editor. *Contemporary Criticism: An Anthology*. Macmillan India, 1989.
- Waugh, Patricia. *Literary Theory and Criticism: An Oxford Guide*. Oxford University Press, 2006.
- Wellek, René, and Austin Warren. *Theory of Literature*. 3rd ed., Harcourt Brace, 1977.

**:: STRUCTURE ::****2.0 Objectives****2.1 Plato: Introduction****2.2 Plato's View of Poetry 2.3 Plato's Attack on Poetry****2.4 Plato's Ideal State****2.5 Major Conflict between Plato and Aristotle****2.6 Plato's Dialogues****2.7 Republic X****2.8 Greek Terms****❖ Check Your Progress**

---

**2.0 OBJECTIVES**

---

- Understand Plato's arguments against poetry as an imitation of reality.
- Examine the concerns Plato raises regarding the moral influence of poetry on individuals and society.
- Analyse Plato's proposal for the exclusion or strict control of poets in the ideal state.
- Explore the relationship between Plato's critique of poetry and his broader philosophical framework, including the Theory of Forms.
- Compare and contrast Plato's views on philosophy and poetry, and their respective roles in the pursuit of knowledge and truth.
- Investigate Plato's concept of katharsis and its implications for tragedy and emotional purging.
- Consider potential reforms to poetry that align with Plato's vision of the ideal state.
- Examine the implications of Plato's critique of poetry for the understanding of art, imitation, and deception.
- Discuss the connections between Plato's criticisms of poetry and his notions of education and the shaping of a just society.
- Evaluate the enduring relevance and influence of Plato's critique of poetry in the fields of aesthetics, ethics, and the philosophy of art.



---

## 2.1 PLATO: INTRODUCTION

---

Plato, one of the most influential philosophers in Western intellectual history, was born in Athens, Greece, around 428 or 427 BCE. He was a student of Socrates and the teacher of Aristotle, forming a lineage of philosophical thought that continues to shape our understanding of ethics, politics, metaphysics, and epistemology. Plato's philosophical contributions are primarily found in the form of dialogues, in which he presents his ideas through conversations and debates among various characters.

Plato's philosophy encompasses a wide range of topics, but his central concerns revolve around the nature of reality, knowledge, and ethics. He sought to uncover the ultimate truths and principles that govern the universe and human existence. For Plato, the physical world is a realm of mere appearances, whereas the realm of Forms or Ideas constitutes the ultimate reality, representing timeless and perfect essences.

Plato's dialogues explore fundamental questions about justice, the nature of the soul, the ideal state, the role of education, and the relationship between the individual and society. His works demonstrate a profound engagement with ethical, political, and metaphysical issues. Through his use of dialectic and dialectical reasoning, Plato aims to engage readers in a process of philosophical inquiry and critical thinking, challenging them to question their beliefs and assumptions.

One of Plato's most notable works is *The Republic*, in which he constructs an ideal state ruled by philosopher-kings who possess knowledge of the Forms. In this work, Plato explores various topics, including the nature of justice, the structure of the soul, and the role of education in shaping individuals and society.

Plato's influence extends far beyond his own time, as his ideas have had a lasting impact on philosophy, politics, and education. His philosophical concepts, such as the Theory of Forms, the allegory of the cave, and his critique of poetry, continue to be debated and studied by scholars and philosophers worldwide.

Plato's philosophical legacy lies in his ability to ask probing questions, challenge conventional wisdom, and push the boundaries of human understanding. His works remain essential reading for anyone interested in grappling with profound philosophical inquiries and exploring the nature of truth, knowledge, and the human condition.

---

## 2.2 PLATO'S VIEW OF POETRY

---

Plato, the ancient Greek philosopher, held a critical view of poetry and expressed his opposition to it in several of his works, most notably in his dialogue *The Republic*. In this dialogue, Plato presents a systematic attack on poetry, considering it a dangerous and misleading form of artistic expression. Plato's critique of poetry stems from his belief in the ideal state and his philosophical theories about knowledge, truth, and the nature of reality.

One of the central arguments Plato puts forth is that poetry is a mere imitation or representation of the physical world. According to Plato, the physical world is already a copy or imitation of the realm of Forms or Ideas, which he considers the ultimate reality. Since poetry is a representation of a

representation, it is, in Plato's view, twice removed from reality and thus inherently misleading and deceptive. He argues that poetry appeals to the emotions rather than reason, leading people astray from the pursuit of truth and the understanding of the Forms.

Plato also criticises poetry for its reliance on mimesis, or the imitation of various characters, including gods, heroes, and immoral individuals. He contends that poets have the ability to portray morally corrupt characters in a favourable light, thus influencing society in a negative way. Plato believed that the ideal state should be governed by rationality and virtue, and he saw poetry as a potential corrupting influence that could undermine the moral fabric of society.

Furthermore, Plato expresses concerns about the emotional impact of poetry. He argues that poetry arouses and indulges the passions and emotions, leading to irrational behaviour. Plato believed that emotions should be guided and controlled by reason, and he saw poetry as a force that could disrupt the harmony of the soul and disturb the balance between reason, spirit, and desire.

In *The Republic*, Plato suggests that poetry should be excluded from his ideal state. He proposes strict censorship of poets, calling for their banishment or re-education. Plato advocates for a state-sponsored educational system that promotes philosophical inquiry, the pursuit of truth, and the cultivation of virtue. In his view, poetry does not contribute to these goals and should, therefore, be marginalised.

It is important to note that Plato's attack on poetry should be understood within the context of his broader philosophical project. His critique reflects his scepticism towards the sensory world and his emphasis on reason and rationality as the means to attain knowledge and truth. Plato's ideal state is one based on the pursuit of justice, the good, and the realisation of the Forms, and he considers poetry a deviation from this ideal.

Plato's discussions of rhetoric and poetry are both extensive and influential. As in so many other cases, he sets the agenda for the subsequent tradition. Plato certainly thought that matters of the greatest importance hung in the balance, as is clear from the famous statement that "there is an old quarrel between philosophy and poetry" (*Republic*, 607b5–6). In his dialogues, both this quarrel and the related quarrel between philosophy and rhetoric amount to clashes between comprehensive worldviews—those of philosophy on the one hand, and of poetry or rhetoric on the other. Plato is (perhaps paradoxically) known for the poetic and rhetorical qualities of his own writings, a fact which will also be discussed in what follows.

While Plato's critique of poetry has had a lasting impact on Western thought, it is worth noting that his views have not gone unchallenged. Many subsequent thinkers and artists have defended the value of poetry and its ability to convey profound truths, evoke emotions, and explore the human condition. Nonetheless, Plato's attack on poetry remains a significant contribution to the ongoing debate about the role of art and its relationship to truth and morality.

---

### **2.3 PLATO'S ATTACK ON POETRY**

---

Plato's attack on poetry in his dialogue *The Republic* is characterised by several salient features that highlight his criticisms and concerns regarding this

art form. These features encapsulate the core arguments and ideas put forth by Plato in his rejection of poetry. Here are some of the prominent features:

**Imitation and Mimesis:** Plato's primary objection to poetry lies in its nature as an imitation or representation of the physical world. He argues that poetry is a copy of a copy, making it twice removed from reality. According to Plato, the physical world is already an imperfect copy of the realm of Forms, which he considers the ultimate reality. Poetry's reliance on mimesis, or the portrayal of characters and events, further reinforces its deceptive nature in Plato's eyes.

**Deception and Illusion:** Plato contends that poetry is inherently misleading and deceptive. By presenting an imitation of reality, it leads people away from the pursuit of truth and the understanding of the Forms. Plato believed that the ideal state should be grounded in reason and the search for genuine knowledge, and he saw poetry as a potential source of confusion and falsehood.

**Corrupting Influence:** Plato expresses concern about the moral influence of poetry. He argues that poets have the power to portray morally corrupt characters in a favourable light, potentially leading society astray. Plato's ideal state is one that values virtue and the pursuit of the good, and he perceives poetry as a potential threat to the moral fabric of society.

**Emotional Manipulation:** Plato criticises poetry for its ability to arouse and indulge emotions. He contends that poetry appeals to the passions rather than reason, which can lead to irrational behaviour. Plato believed that emotions should be guided by reason, and he saw poetry as a force that could disrupt the harmony of the soul and upset the balance between reason, spirit, and desire.

**Censorship and Marginalisation:** Plato suggests that poetry should be excluded from his ideal state. He proposes strict censorship of poets, advocating for their banishment or re-education. Plato envisions an educational system that prioritises philosophical inquiry, the pursuit of truth, and the cultivation of virtue. In his view, poetry does not contribute to these goals and should, therefore, be marginalised.

**Focus on Reason and Rationality:** Plato's attack on poetry reflects his broader philosophical project, which places a high value on reason and rationality as the means to attain knowledge and truth. He sees poetry as a deviation from the pursuit of genuine understanding, emphasising the importance of the intellect over the emotions.

Plato's attacks on poetry can be examined on three distinct grounds: moral, emotional, and intellectual. Each of these perspectives reveals his concerns regarding the potential negative effects of poetry on individuals and society.

**Moral Grounds:** Plato argues that poetry has a corrupting influence on moral values. He believes that poets have the power to portray morally corrupt characters in a favourable light, which can lead to the acceptance or glorification of immoral behaviour. Plato's ideal state is founded on the pursuit of virtue and the good, and he perceives poetry as a potential threat to the moral fabric of society. By presenting morally questionable characters as heroes or role models, poetry can shape people's understanding of right and wrong in detrimental ways.

**Emotional Grounds:** Plato criticises poetry for its ability to evoke and manipulate emotions. He contends that poetry appeals to the passions and emotions rather than reason, leading to irrational behaviour. Plato believes that emotions should be guided and controlled by reason, and he sees poetry as a force that can disrupt the harmony of the soul. By indulging emotions without rational oversight, poetry may hinder individuals from making sound judgments and decisions. Plato's emphasis on reason as the guiding principle of the soul leads him to view poetry's emotional appeal as potentially disruptive and misleading.

**Intellectual Grounds:** Plato's attacks on poetry are deeply rooted in his philosophical commitment to seeking truth and understanding through rational inquiry. He argues that poetry is an imitation or representation of the physical world, which itself is an imperfect copy of the realm of Forms or Ideas. Poetry, being twice removed from reality, is, in Plato's view, inherently deceptive and misleading. He contends that poetry distracts individuals from the pursuit of genuine knowledge and truth. Plato's emphasis on reason and rationality as the means to attain knowledge positions poetry as a deviation from the path of genuine understanding.

By attacking poetry on moral, emotional, and intellectual grounds, Plato aims to highlight the potential dangers he perceives in this art form. He sees poetry as a potentially corrupting influence that can distort moral values, disrupt emotional balance, and hinder the pursuit of truth. However, it is important to note that Plato's views have been subjected to criticism and alternative perspectives throughout history, as many argue for the value and significance of poetry in exploring the complexities of human experience and expressing profound truths.

## 2.4 Plato's Ideal State

In Plato's ideal state, as depicted in his dialogue *The Republic*, he proposes strict censorship of poetry and suggests that only specific types of poetry should be allowed. According to Plato, in the ideal state, "no poetry should be admitted save hymns to the gods and oration on famous men." This statement reflects Plato's belief that certain types of poetry can align with his philosophical goals and contribute positively to society. The reasons for these specific allowances are as follows:

**Hymns to the Gods:** Plato permits hymns to the gods because he views them as a form of worship and reverence. Plato believes in a higher reality, the realm of Forms or Ideas, and considers the gods as part of this higher reality. Hymns dedicated to the gods would be expressions of piety and a means of acknowledging the divine order. These hymns align with Plato's emphasis on the pursuit of the good and the transcendent, as they can inspire individuals to contemplate higher truths and virtues.

**Orations on Famous Men:** Plato suggests allowing orations on famous men, which may include speeches or narratives about heroic figures and individuals who have made significant contributions to society. Plato likely sees value in such orations because they can serve as examples of virtue and inspire others to emulate noble qualities. By highlighting the lives and achievements of notable individuals, Plato aims to cultivate moral and intellectual excellence in

his ideal state. These orations can provide role models and exemplify the ideals of the society Plato envisions.

By permitting only hymns to the gods and orations on famous men, Plato aims to carefully control the types of poetry that enter his ideal state. He chooses these forms because they align with his philosophical and moral framework, promoting values he considers essential for the well-being and harmony of society.

It is important to note that Plato's exclusion of other forms of poetry reflects his scepticism towards the potentially deceptive and misleading aspects of poetic imitation and emotional manipulation. He seeks to limit the influence of poetry that he perceives as contrary to his vision of a just and virtuous society. However, his strict censorship of poetry has been subject to criticism and debate, as later thinkers and artists have emphasised the diverse contributions that poetry can make to human understanding and expression.

---

## 2.5 MAJOR CONFLICT BETWEEN PLATO AND ARISTOTLE

---

The major conflict between Plato and Aristotle on poetry revolves around their contrasting views on the nature, purpose, and value of this art form. While Plato strongly criticised poetry and advocated for its exclusion from the ideal state, Aristotle held a more positive and nuanced perspective, seeing poetry as a valuable means of imitation, catharsis, and moral education. Key points of disagreement include the following:

**Imitation:** Plato viewed poetry as an imitation of the physical world, which he considered a copy of the realm of Forms or Ideas. He believed poetry, being twice removed from reality, was inherently deceptive and misleading. In contrast, Aristotle saw imitation as a natural and essential human instinct. He argued that poetry imitates not merely the physical world but the universal aspects of human experience, allowing audiences to recognise and understand essential truths.

**Emotional and Moral Influence:** Plato criticised poetry for its ability to manipulate emotions and influence moral values negatively. He believed poetry appeals to the passions rather than reason, leading to irrational behaviour. Aristotle recognised that poetry evokes emotions but saw this emotional engagement as valuable and cathartic. He believed poetry could purify and provide emotional release, leading to catharsis and moral growth.

**Education and Moral Purpose:** Plato questioned the educational value of poetry, arguing that it distracts individuals from the pursuit of genuine knowledge and virtue. Aristotle, on the other hand, believed poetry has a significant role in moral education. He saw it as a means of presenting ethical dilemmas, showcasing virtues and vices, and offering moral insights that can guide individuals toward a better understanding of ethics and human nature.

**Philosophy versus Poetry:** Plato valued philosophy as the highest form of knowledge, emphasising reason and intellectual inquiry. He believed philosophical discourse is superior to poetic expression and that philosophy should guide the ideal state. Aristotle, while acknowledging the importance of philosophy, saw poetry as a distinct and valuable form of knowledge. He believed philosophy and poetry can complement each other, as they serve

different purposes and address different aspects of human understanding and experience.

These divergent perspectives reflect their broader philosophical frameworks and priorities.

---

## 2.6 PLATO'S DIALOGUES

---

Plato's dialogues can be seen as a unique blend of rhetoric and poetry, incorporating elements of both forms of expression. While Plato criticised poetry as an imitation and a potential source of deception, his dialogues display a sophisticated use of language, rhetoric, and literary techniques that resemble poetic qualities. The following points illustrate how Plato's dialogues can be understood as a fusion of rhetoric and poetry:

**Dialogic Form:** Plato's dialogues are written as conversations between Socrates and various interlocutors. This dialogic structure enables the exploration of ideas through arguments and counterarguments. The dialogues often employ rhetorical devices such as persuasion, irony, and questioning to engage the audience and stimulate critical thinking.

**Eloquent Language:** Plato's dialogues showcase mastery of language, employing eloquence and, at times, poetic expression. The characters use metaphors, analogies, and vivid descriptions to convey ideas effectively. Plato's diction reflects careful attention to style.

**Characterisation:** Plato's dialogues feature well-developed characters who embody distinct personalities and viewpoints. These characters employ emotional appeals, logical arguments, and rhetorical techniques to persuade others. Through their interactions, Plato explores different rhetorical approaches and their effects on persuasion and knowledge.

**Narratives and Mythology:** Plato incorporates narratives and mythological references as rhetorical devices to convey deeper philosophical concepts. He often uses stories and allegories to capture imagination and facilitate understanding. These narrative elements add a poetic dimension to the dialogues.

**Dramatic Tension:** Plato's dialogues often include moments of tension and conflict, similar to dramatic structure. They unfold through intellectual clashes and debates, presenting opposing viewpoints and creating suspense around the resolution of philosophical problems.

**Didactic Purpose:** While poetry often aims to entertain and evoke emotion, Plato's dialogues serve a didactic purpose: guiding readers toward philosophical inquiry and moral understanding. They use rhetorical strategies to communicate philosophical insights and foster intellectual growth.

Thus, although Plato criticises poetry as imitation and deception, his dialogues integrate rhetorical and poetic elements to engage readers and convey philosophical ideas.

---

## 2.7 REPUBLIC X

---

*Republic X* is the tenth and final book of Plato's *The Republic*. In this book, Plato examines the nature of art, focusing especially on poetry and its place in the ideal state. *Republic X* is widely regarded as a significant discussion of

aesthetics, censorship, and the relationship between art and truth. Key themes include the following:

**The Imitative Nature of Art:** Plato begins by arguing that art, including poetry, is an imitation of the physical world, which itself is a copy of the realm of Forms or Ideas. Art represents appearances rather than ultimate reality. Therefore, imitation creates distance from truth and can distort understanding.

**The Moral Influence of Art:** Plato expresses concern that poets can portray morally corrupt characters in a favourable light, potentially misleading society. Since the ideal state is grounded in virtue and the good, Plato believes poetry can undermine ethical foundations by shaping harmful attitudes.

**Censorship of Art:** Plato proposes strict control of poets and their works in the ideal state. He argues that poetry should be excluded or reformed because it does not contribute to the pursuit of knowledge and virtue and may instead corrupt moral education.

**The Theory of Forms:** *Republic X* reflects Plato's Theory of Forms, which posits that ultimate reality lies in the realm of Forms. Plato regards poetry as a deceptive imitation that distracts individuals from rational inquiry and from contemplating the Forms.

**Philosophical Education:** Plato emphasises the importance of philosophical education. He holds that reasoned inquiry is essential for genuine knowledge and proposes that philosopher-kings, who grasp the Forms, should rule the ideal state.

Overall, *Republic X* presents Plato's critique of poetry and his argument for restricting art to protect truth and virtue in a just society.

---

## 2.8 GREEK TERMS

---

In Book X of *The Republic*, Plato employs several Greek terms to convey his philosophical ideas. These terms help express key concepts with precision. Notable terms include:

**Mimesis:** Imitation or representation. Plato uses this concept to critique poetry and art as imitations of the physical world and therefore removed from ultimate reality.

**Poetess:** Plato uses this term to refer to poets or creators of art. He scrutinises their influence on society and argues for their exclusion or strict control in the ideal state.

**Ekpagenentes:** A term suggesting being carried away or led astray. Plato uses it to express concern that people may be diverted from truth and virtue by the deceptive nature of imitative art.

**Katharsis:** Purging or cleansing of emotions. Plato acknowledges the emotional impact of tragedy but questions whether it produces genuine purification, since it engages passion more than reason.

**Hedone:** Pleasure or enjoyment. Plato critiques poetry for appealing to sensory and emotional pleasure, which he sees as obstructing higher moral and intellectual aims.

**Aletheia:** Truth or reality. Plato contrasts poetic imitation, which deals with appearances, with philosophy, which seeks truth through the Forms.

These terms contribute to the clarity and depth of Plato's argument and strengthen the philosophical precision of his critique.

### ❖ Check Your Progress

1. What are the main criticisms that Plato raises against poetry?
2. How does Plato view poetry as an imitation of reality? What implications does this have for the value of poetry?
3. What concerns does Plato have regarding the moral influence of poetry on individuals and society?
4. Why does Plato argue for the exclusion or strict control of poets in the ideal state?
5. How does Plato's critique of poetry relate to his broader philosophical framework, such as the Theory of Forms?
6. In what ways does Plato differentiate between philosophy and poetry? What role does he assign to each in the pursuit of knowledge and truth?
7. How does Plato's concept of katharsis differ from the traditional understanding of emotional catharsis in tragedy?
8. Can poetry be reformed to align with Plato's vision of the ideal state? If so, how?
9. How does Plato's critique of poetry reflect his view of the role of reason and rationality in human understanding?
10. How do Plato's criticisms of poetry compare to his views on other forms of art and imitation?
11. Does Plato's attack on poetry extend to all types of poetry, or are there exceptions? If so, what are they and why?
12. How do Plato's criticisms of poetry address the potential dangers of art as a tool of manipulation and deception?
13. How does Plato's critique of poetry relate to his notions of education and the shaping of a just society?
14. How have subsequent philosophers and scholars interpreted and responded to Plato's criticisms of poetry?
15. What can we learn from Plato's critique of poetry in terms of the enduring tension between art, ethics, and the pursuit of truth?

### MCQs

1. According to Plato, poetry is criticised because it:
  - a) Imitates reality
  - b) Encourages moral virtue
  - c) Facilitates the pursuit of knowledge
  - d) Promotes emotional catharsis
2. Plato argues for the exclusion of poets in the ideal state primarily due to their:



- a) Lack of artistic talent
  - b) Influence on moral values
  - c) Inability to understand philosophy
  - d) Disruptive behaviour in society
3. Plato's concept of katharsis in tragedy differs from the traditional understanding in that it:
- a) Purges the emotions through rational contemplation
  - b) Reinforces emotional turmoil and excess
  - c) Provides a sense of relief and emotional release
  - d) Diminishes the impact of tragic experiences
4. Plato's criticism of poetry reflects his broader philosophical framework known as the:
- a) Theory of Relativity
  - b) Theory of Evolution
  - c) Theory of Forms
  - d) Theory of Natural Selection
5. Plato's proposal for the control or exclusion of poets in the ideal state is based on the belief that:
- a) Poetry can lead individuals astray from truth and virtue
  - b) Poetry is essential for moral education
  - c) Poets are more knowledgeable than philosophers
  - d) Poetry is the purest form of artistic expression

**:: STRUCTURE ::**

- 3.0 Introduction: Aristotle**
- 3.1 Aristotle's *Poetics***
- 3.2 Aristotle's Views on the Different Kinds of Poetry**
- 3.3 Poetry as a "Medium of Imitation"**
- 3.4 Aristotle Defines Poetry**
- 3.5 The Six Key Elements Essential to the Form of Tragedy**
- 3.6 Which Is the "Higher" Form? Tragedy or Comedy?**
- 3.7 The Greek Words**
- 3.8 Aristotle's Exclusive Views on Tragedy**
- 3.9 Aristotle's Exclusive Views on Comedy**
- 3.10 Aristotle's Exclusive Views on Epic**
- 3.11 Aristotle's View on "Irrational" Error**
- 3.12 The Catharsis**
- 3.13 The Tragic Hero**
- 3.14 The Plot**
- 3.15 Types of Imitation (Mimesis)**
- 3.16 How Poetry Emerged**
- ❖ Check Your Progress**

---

**3.0 INTRODUCTION: ARISTOTLE**

---

Aristotle, born in 384 BCE in the ancient Greek city of Stagira, is one of the most influential figures in Western philosophy, science, and literature. He is widely regarded as one of the greatest thinkers of all time, and his ideas continue to shape and influence various fields of study to this day.

Aristotle was a student of Plato, another renowned philosopher, but he developed his own unique philosophical system that came to be known as Aristotelianism, or the Peripatetic school. He made significant contributions to

a wide range of disciplines, including ethics, metaphysics, logic, biology, psychology, and politics.

In his philosophical work, Aristotle sought to understand the nature of reality and knowledge. He believed in the importance of empirical observation and systematic analysis as the foundation for acquiring knowledge about the world. Aristotle's emphasis on observation and classification paved the way for scientific inquiry and influenced the development of modern scientific methods.

One of Aristotle's most famous works is *Nicomachean Ethics*, where he explores the nature of virtue, happiness, and the good life. He argued that human flourishing is achieved through the cultivation of moral virtues and the pursuit of eudaimonia, a term often translated as "human flourishing" or "well-being."

Aristotle's *Metaphysics* delves into questions of existence, causality, and the nature of reality. He proposed that everything in the world has a purpose and that the study of metaphysics is the pursuit of understanding the fundamental principles and causes of the universe.

Aristotle's work in logic, particularly his treatise *Organon*, laid the foundation for formal logic as a discipline. He developed the syllogism as a method of deductive reasoning, which has remained influential in logic and philosophy of language.

In addition to his contributions to philosophy and science, Aristotle also made significant contributions to literature and aesthetics. His work *Poetics* is a groundbreaking treatise on literary theory, in which he explores the principles of drama, tragedy, and epic poetry. Aristotle's insights into structure, characterisation, and the emotional impact of dramatic works have had a profound influence on the theory and practice of literature.

Aristotle's intellectual legacy extends far beyond his own lifetime. His ideas have influenced countless thinkers and continue to shape our understanding of the world. His systematic approach to knowledge and his commitment to rational inquiry have had a lasting impact on philosophy, science, and various fields of study, making him a towering figure in the history of human thought.

---

### **3.1 ARISTOTLE'S *POETICS***

---

Aristotle's *Poetics* stands as one of the most influential works in the history of literary theory and criticism. Composed in the fourth century BCE, this treatise offers a comprehensive exploration of the nature, structure, and purpose of poetry and drama. Aristotle sought to provide a systematic analysis of the elements that constitute successful works of art, particularly those found in tragic plays.

The *Poetics* serves as a foundational text in aesthetics, presenting Aristotle's observations and insights into the art of storytelling. Although the original manuscripts have been lost to history, the surviving text provides valuable understanding of the core ideas presented in this seminal work.

Aristotle's approach to poetics is rooted in his broader philosophical framework. He believed that art, and specifically poetry, has the power to imitate and represent life in ways that reveal essential truths about human

nature and the world. For Aristotle, the study of poetry was not merely an intellectual exercise but also a means to understand and engage with the complexities of existence.

One of the central concepts in the *Poetics* is **mimesis**, which refers to the act of imitation or representation. Aristotle argues that poetry, through its mimetic nature, holds a mirror up to reality and provides a heightened reflection of human experience. He explores different modes of mimesis and examines how various artistic techniques can evoke emotions, elicit catharsis, and create a compelling narrative.

Aristotle identifies the elements that constitute successful drama, emphasizing the importance of plot, character, thought, diction, melody, and spectacle. He analyses how these components work together to create a harmonious and aesthetically effective whole. According to Aristotle, a well-structured plot with a clear beginning, middle, and end is essential for engaging the audience and producing emotional responses.

Aristotle also analyses tragedy, which he considers the most superior form of poetry. He discusses the tragic hero, who is flawed yet possesses admirable qualities, and explains the importance of catharsis, the purging or cleansing of emotions experienced by the audience through tragedy. Aristotle's insights on tragedy have influenced literary works for centuries and continue to shape critical understanding of dramatic storytelling.

While the *Poetics* focuses primarily on tragedy, Aristotle also touches upon other forms of poetry, including epic poetry and comedy, noting their distinct characteristics and effects on audiences.

Despite being written over two millennia ago, Aristotle's *Poetics* remains widely studied today. Its influence lies in its rigorous analysis of fundamental principles underlying literature and drama. By offering a systematic framework for understanding storytelling, Aristotle's *Poetics* remains an invaluable resource for scholars, writers, and readers.

---

### 3.2 ARISTOTLE'S VIEWS ON THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF POETRY

---

Aristotle's views on the different kinds of poetry, the structure of a good poem, and the division of a poem into its component parts are discussed in his work *Poetics*. In this treatise, Aristotle offers a detailed analysis of the aspects that contribute to the success and effectiveness of poetry.

**Different Kinds of Poetry:** Aristotle identifies three primary forms of poetry: epic poetry, tragic poetry, and comic poetry. Epic poetry, exemplified by Homer's epics such as *The Iliad* and *The Odyssey*, deals with heroic and grand themes, often recounting the deeds of legendary figures. Tragic poetry, which Aristotle considers the highest form of poetry, focuses on the representation of serious and significant actions, typically involving a tragic hero who undergoes a downfall due to a tragic flaw. Comic poetry aims to entertain through humour and satire, often highlighting the follies and vices of society.

**Structure of a Good Poem:** According to Aristotle, a good poem should possess a well-structured plot. He emphasizes the importance of plot above other elements, considering it the soul of tragedy. Aristotle identifies three key components of a plot: a beginning (*protasis*), a middle (*epitasis*), and an end

(*catastrophe*). The beginning introduces the main characters and establishes the initial conflict; the middle develops the plot through rising actions and complications; and the end resolves the conflict and provides closure. Aristotle stresses unity, coherence, and causality, suggesting that events should be necessary, probable, and interconnected.

**Division of a Poem into Its Component Parts:** Aristotle breaks poetry into six essential parts: plot (*mythos*), character (*ethos*), thought (*dianoia*), diction (*lexis*), melody (*melos*), and spectacle (*opsis*).

- **Plot (Mythos):** The arrangement of events in a unified sequence; the most important element.
- **Character (Ethos):** The moral and psychological qualities of individuals represented in the poem.
- **Thought (Dianoia):** The ideas, themes, and reasoning expressed through the work.
- **Diction (Lexis):** Choice and arrangement of words; the style of expression.
- **Melody (Melos):** Rhythm, meter, and musical elements contributing to emotional impact.
- **Spectacle (Opsis):** Visual presentation and stagecraft; acknowledged but considered least important.

These ideas have had a lasting influence on literary theory and criticism.

---

### 3.3 POETRY AS A “MEDIUM OF IMITATION”

---

Aristotle views poetry as a “medium of imitation” in *Poetics*. According to Aristotle, poetry imitates or represents life through the portrayal of characters, emotions, and actions. He believes that poetry can capture and reflect the essence of human experience, providing insight into the complexities of life.

**Imitation (Mimesis):** Aristotle’s concept of imitation, or mimesis, forms the foundation of his understanding of poetry. He argues that poetry is an art form that imitates the world and human actions. Through its mimetic nature, poetry portrays life in ways that reveal truths about human nature, society, and the human condition.

**Portrayal of Characters:** Aristotle considers the portrayal of characters integral to poetry’s imitation. Characters are representations of human beings. He suggests that characters should possess qualities that are universal and relatable to audiences. Through characters, poetry captures emotions, motivations, and interactions.

**Expression of Emotions:** Poetry aims to evoke emotions in audiences. Aristotle emphasizes emotional impact because it enables audiences to connect with a work deeply. He argues that poets should portray emotions effectively and generate catharsis, a purging or cleansing of emotions.

**Depiction of Actions:** Actions play a significant role in Aristotle’s understanding of poetry as imitation. Poetry represents significant and meaningful actions. Aristotle highlights the importance of a well-constructed plot unfolding through actions connected by causal relationships. These actions illuminate human behaviour and the consequences of choices.

Aristotle's view of poetry as imitation has influenced later literary theory by emphasizing literature's power to provide insight, emotional resonance, and deeper understanding.

---

### 3.4 ARISTOTLE DEFINES POETRY

---

Aristotle defines poetry broadly in *Poetics*. According to Aristotle, poetry includes epic poetry, tragedy, comedy, dithyrambic poetry, and even certain kinds of music. This inclusive definition highlights the diversity of poetic expression.

#### Tragedy

Tragedy holds a central position in Aristotle's understanding of poetry. He views tragedy as the most superior form because of its ability to evoke profound emotional responses and provoke contemplation. Tragedy represents serious and significant actions, often involving a tragic hero who experiences a downfall due to a tragic flaw or an error in judgment. It explores universal themes such as fate, morality, and the human condition.

Aristotle's definition of tragedy provides a comprehensive understanding of this dramatic genre. According to Aristotle, tragedy is an art form that imitates a serious and complete action, has magnitude, arouses pity and fear in the audience, and leads to a catharsis of these emotions.

- i. **Imitation of Action:** Tragedy is an imitation (*mimesis*) of action rather than mere imitation of characters or dialogue.
- ii. **Seriousness and Completeness:** Tragedy deals with serious subjects and has a structured narrative with a clear beginning, middle, and end.
- iii. **Arousal of Pity and Fear:** Tragedy evokes pity and fear, producing empathy and recognition of vulnerability.
- iv. **Catharsis:** Through pity and fear, the audience undergoes purging or cleansing of emotions.
- v. **Unity and Coherence:** Plot, character, and themes should form a cohesive whole.
- vi. **Tragic Hero:** The central character experiences downfall due to hamartia (tragic flaw) or error in judgment.

#### Comedy

Aristotle recognizes comedy as a distinct form of poetry. Comedy aims to entertain through humour, satire, and depiction of follies. It often focuses on lighter themes and provides contrast to tragedy.

Aristotle describes comedy as imitation (*mimesis*) depicting people as worse than they are in average life. Key elements include:

- i. **Imitation of Inferior Characters:** Comedy portrays characters of a "lower type" or inferior traits.
- ii. **Ridicule and Mockery:** Comedy uses humour and satire to expose absurdities and vices.
- iii. **Light-hearted Tone:** Comedy uses wordplay, irony, and comic situations.
- iv. **Happy Resolution:** Comedy generally ends with a satisfactory or happy outcome.

v. **Critique of Society and Human Behaviour:** Comedy can challenge norms through humour.

Aristotle notes comedy may include vulgar or coarse elements, but he cautions against excessive reliance on them.

### **Dithyrambic Poetry**

Dithyrambic poetry is choral lyric poetry associated with Greek festivals and rituals, often celebrating gods or mythical figures. It combines music, dance, and poetic language.

### **Music**

Aristotle's understanding of poetry extends to some kinds of music, especially where lyrics and expressive melody evoke emotion and convey narrative.

### **Epic Poetry**

Aristotle notes that epic poetry imitates noble actions and characters like tragedy, but differs in form. Epic is narrative rather than dramatic and typically uses a single meter. Epic often focuses on heroic deeds and grand themes.

Aristotle's definition of epic includes:

- i. **Imitation of Noble Actions:** Epic imitates action through narrative.
- ii. **Portrayal of Noble Characters:** Epic focuses on heroic figures embodying admirable virtues.
- iii. **Narrative Form:** Epic unfolds through storytelling rather than stage performance.
- iv. **Unity of Plot:** Events should contribute to a coherent whole.
- v. **Meter:** Epic typically uses a consistent meter, such as dactylic hexameter.
- vi. **Elevated Language:** Epic uses grand and descriptive diction.

Aristotle's account distinguishes tragedy, comedy, and epic by their different ways of representing human characters and action.

---

## **3.5 THE SIX KEY ELEMENTS ESSENTIAL TO THE FORM OF TRAGEDY**

---

In *Poetics*, Aristotle outlines six key elements essential to tragedy: plot, character, diction, thought, spectacle, and song (melody). Each plays a role in creating an effective tragic work.

**Plot (Mythos):** The arrangement of events; the most important element. Plot should have a clear beginning, middle, and end and follow causality and coherence.

**Character (Ethos):** Characters should be well-developed and appropriate, including the tragic hero who has a flaw or error leading to downfall.

**Diction (Lexis):** The choice and arrangement of words; vivid and appropriate language enhances dramatic effect.

**Thought (Dianoia):** The ideas and themes expressed; tragedy should engage profound and universal issues.

**Spectacle (Opsis):** Visual elements; important but least essential compared to plot and character.

**Song (Melos):** Musical and rhythmic elements; contribute to emotional intensity.

Aristotle's framework provides a method for analysing tragedy in terms of both artistic construction and emotional impact.

---

### 3.6 WHICH IS THE “HIGHER” FORM? TRAGEDY OR COMEDY?

---

In *Poetics*, Aristotle addresses comparisons between forms and concludes that tragedy is the superior form, particularly in relation to epic poetry. He argues that tragedy is more concentrated and refined, with unity of action creating intense emotional engagement.

Aristotle suggests tragedy produces a more profound cathartic effect because it evokes pity and fear and offers emotional purification. He acknowledges epic poetry's expansive scope but argues it lacks tragedy's concentrated intensity. Aristotle also observes that tragedy can employ various meters, whereas epic usually employs one, which he sees as a kind of versatility.

Aristotle's conclusion favours tragedy as a higher form due to its compactness, emotional impact, catharsis, and rhythmic variety. He acknowledges that different readers may evaluate genres differently, but his analysis clarifies why tragedy holds a privileged position within his system.

---

### 3.7 THE GREEK WORDS

---

In *Poetics*, Aristotle uses Greek terms central to his analysis of poetry and drama. These include:

**Mimesis:** Imitation or representation.

**Mythos:** Plot or story.

**Ethos:** Character and moral disposition.

**Lexis:** Diction and language.

**Katharsis:** Purification or cleansing of pity and fear.

**Opsis:** Spectacle; visual elements.

**Antistrophe:** A section of choral ode following the strophe.

**Deus ex machina:** “God from the machine”; divine intervention resolving the plot.

**Denouement:** Resolution where conflicts are settled.

**Dithyramb:** Hymn/song in honour of Dionysus.

**Episodion:** Episode within a tragedy.

**Epode:** Third part following strophe and antistrophe.

**Hamartia:** Tragic flaw or error in judgment.

**Pathos:** Emotional suffering; appeal to pity and empathy.

**Strophe:** First part of a choral ode.

**Telos:** Ultimate purpose or goal of a work.



---

### **3.8 ARISTOTLE'S EXCLUSIVE VIEWS ON TRAGEDY**

---

Aristotle sees tragedy as imitation (*mimesis*) of action that evokes pity and fear and results in catharsis. He emphasises the tragic hero, plot structure, and unity.

He argues the plot is the most important element, with coherent cause-and-effect progression. He also discusses character, diction, thought, spectacle, and music as supporting elements. Aristotle's account stresses tragedy's capacity to explore the human condition and produce deep emotional and intellectual effects.

---

### **3.9 ARISTOTLE'S EXCLUSIVE VIEWS ON COMEDY**

---

Aristotle's discussion of comedy is shorter than his analysis of tragedy, but he identifies comedy as imitation focusing on the laughable and ridiculous. Comedy uses humour, satire, and ridicule to present flawed and "lower type" characters and to critique social norms.

He notes that comedy typically ends in a happy or satisfactory resolution. Aristotle also mentions comedy's tendency to include coarse elements but warns that excessive vulgarity may reduce artistic quality.

---

### **3.10 ARISTOTLE'S EXCLUSIVE VIEWS ON EPIC**

---

Aristotle regards epic as imitation (*mimesis*) presented through narrative. Epic typically uses a specific meter and elevated language, focusing on noble characters and heroic action. Aristotle stresses unity of plot, even when epics include many episodes.

He recognises epic's didactic potential and its role in presenting moral and cultural values, while distinguishing it from drama due to its narrative mode rather than performance.

---

### **3.11 ARISTOTLE'S VIEW ON "IRRATIONAL" ERROR**

---

For Aristotle, an "irrational" error refers to a mistake or inconsistency that lacks logical coherence within the context of a work. Such errors can disrupt internal consistency, weaken credibility, and reduce audience engagement.

Aristotle acknowledges that minor inconsistencies may be tolerated if they do not undermine the overall coherence of the narrative. However, he maintains that the best works aim for internal consistency and rational coherence, and frequent irrational errors detract from artistic merit.

---

### **3.12 THE CATHARSIS**

---

Aristotle presents catharsis as the purging or cleansing of emotions, particularly pity and fear, which tragedy evokes by portraying the suffering and downfall of the tragic hero.

He suggests that the plot should gradually build pity and fear, leading to a climactic moment of emotional intensity and release. While Aristotle does not provide a detailed mechanism for catharsis, his discussion has produced extensive debate and interpretation, including emotional, moral, and intellectual accounts of catharsis.

---

### 3.13 THE TRAGIC HERO

---

According to Aristotle, the tragic hero is not a perfect moral figure. The tragic hero is typically noble and admirable but flawed. Key qualities include:

- **Hamartia (tragic flaw):** A flaw or error in judgment contributing to downfall.
- **Nobility and greatness:** High rank or exceptional qualities, making the fall more impactful.
- **Tragic fate or fortune:** Downfall may involve external circumstances, creating inevitability.
- **Catharsis:** The hero's fate evokes pity and fear, producing emotional purging.
- **Recognition and reversal:** Moments of anagnorisis (recognition) and peripeteia (reversal).
- **Moral complexity:** A mixture of good and bad qualities, reflecting human complexity.

These qualities are general observations drawn from Aristotle's analysis of Greek tragedy.

---

### 3.14 THE PLOT

---

In *Poetics*, Aristotle argues that plot is more important than character or speech in tragedy.

He emphasises tragedy as imitation of action, requiring unity and coherence. Plot should demonstrate causal relationships and produce emotional impact through the structured sequence of events leading to the climax. Aristotle also argues that plot enables tragedy to express universal themes and thus reach broader significance.

Characters and speech remain important but should support the plot and contribute to its development.

---

### 3.15 TYPES OF IMITATION (MIMESIS)

---

Aristotle identifies three types of imitation:

**Imitation of Nature:** Representation of the natural world.  
**Imitation of Men:** Representation of human character and behaviour.  
**Imitation of Things as They Ought to Be:** Representation of idealised or morally superior versions of reality.

These types illustrate different artistic approaches to representing reality, human life, and ideal forms.

---

### 3.16 HOW POETRY EMERGED

---

According to Aristotle, poetry emerged due to two fundamental human instincts: the instinct for imitation (*mimesis*) and the instinct for harmony and rhythm.

Humans naturally imitate the world around them; poetry arose as a means of representing actions, emotions, and experiences. Humans are also drawn to rhythm and harmony; poetry satisfies this instinct through the musical and

patterned arrangement of language. Therefore, poetry developed because it meets both the desire to imitate and the enjoyment of rhythmic beauty.

### ❖ Check Your Progress

#### Questions

1. What is the central concept of mimesis in Aristotle's *Poetics*?
2. How does Aristotle define tragedy, and what are its main components?
3. What is the significance of plot in Aristotle's *Poetics*? How does it contribute to the overall impact of a tragedy?
4. According to Aristotle, what are the characteristics of a tragic hero? How do they contribute to the audience's engagement with the play?
5. How does Aristotle define catharsis, and what role does it play in tragedy?
6. What is the difference between tragedy and comedy according to Aristotle? How do they evoke different emotional responses from the audience?
7. How does Aristotle view the relationship between poetry and imitation? What does he believe poetry imitates?
8. What are the different forms of poetry that Aristotle discusses in his *Poetics*? How do they differ in terms of structure and purpose?
9. How does Aristotle define the concept of hamartia and its role in tragedy?
10. According to Aristotle, what is the role of spectacle in tragedy? How does it contribute to the overall theatrical experience?
11. How does Aristotle view the relationship between ethics and tragedy? How does tragedy serve as a moral or cathartic experience?
12. What is the role of music in Aristotle's understanding of poetry? How does it enhance the emotional impact of a performance?
13. How does Aristotle view the relationship between poetry and philosophy in his *Poetics*?
14. What are the main criticisms and controversies surrounding Aristotle's *Poetics*? How have these influenced subsequent literary theory and criticism?
15. How does Aristotle's *Poetics* continue to shape our understanding and analysis of dramatic works today?

#### MCQs

1. According to Aristotle, what is the purpose of tragedy?
  - a) To evoke pity and fear in the audience
  - b) To entertain the audience with humorous situations
  - c) To showcase the flaws and weaknesses of society
  - d) To convey moral lessons through didactic storytelling

2. In Aristotle's *Poetics*, comedy differs from tragedy in that it portrays characters as:
  - a) Nobler and better than they are in real life
  - b) Inferior and worse than they are in real life
  - c) Morally ambiguous and conflicted
  - d) Completely ordinary and average
3. What is the significance of catharsis in Aristotle's theory of tragedy?
  - a) It provides a sense of emotional relief and purification for the audience.
  - b) It represents the climax of the tragic plot.
  - c) It serves as a moral lesson for the characters involved.
  - d) It creates a heightened sense of suspense and anticipation.
4. According to Aristotle, what is the primary element that distinguishes tragedy from other forms of poetry?
  - a) The use of elevated language and poetic devices
  - b) The presence of a central tragic hero
  - c) The focus on evoking specific emotions in the audience
  - d) The depiction of noble and significant actions
5. Which of the following best summarises Aristotle's view on the importance of plot in a tragedy?
  - a) Plot is the least important element compared to character and dialogue.
  - b) Plot serves as the backbone of a tragedy and holds the entire work together.
  - c) Plot should be minimal and simple, allowing the characters to take centre stage.
  - d) Plot is only important if it can surprise and shock the audience.

**:: STRUCTURE ::**

- 4.0 Objectives**
- 4.1 Introduction to the Age**
- 4.2 Introduction to Aristotle**
- 4.3 The Text: Imitation**
- 4.4 The Text: Tragedy**
- 4.5 The Text: Epic**
- 4.6 Core Terms**
- 4.7 Let us sum up**
- 4.8 Key words**
- 4.9 Suggested Reading**

---

**4.0 OBJECTIVES**

---

In this unit you will learn to:

- Understand the various concepts enumerated by Aristotle in *The Poetics*
- Review some of the criticism down the ages

---

**4.1 INTRODUCTION TO THE AGE**

---

The Classical period preceded the medieval and early modern period. This period was marked by great additions to the body of knowledge. In Greece, we have the great trio of Socrates, Plato and Aristotle. It was in this period that we see how Greek philosophy dealt with a wide variety of subjects including astronomy, mathematics, ethics, metaphysics, biology, rhetoric, aesthetics etc. It is generally accepted that ancient Greek philosophy began in the Greek colonies and many later philosophers (from Pythagoras to Plato) studied in Egypt and developed their philosophies there. And it is in Athens that the foundations of Western civilisation are supposed to have been laid, with its cultural achievements during the 5th century BC.

**❖ Check your Progress 1**

State whether True or False:

- i) The classical period had great advancements in knowledge.
- ii) The trio lived in Rome.
- iii) Plato was a Greek philosopher.
- iv) Egypt had no connections with Greece.

v) The foundations of Western civilisation were supposed to have been laid in Athens.

---

## 4.2 ARISTOTLE

---

As you have already been introduced to Aristotle in an earlier unit, there will be a very brief introduction here. Aristotle (384–322 BCE) was the son of a physician of Northern Greece. He went to Athens at the age of 17, and formed a close association with Plato and the Academy. For three years, he was the tutor of Alexander at Macedonia. He returned to Athens and founded the Lyceum.

Aristotle is supposed to have written at least 200 treatises, of which very few survive to this day. *Poetics* is considered to be one of the earliest surviving works of Greek dramatic theory.

### ❖ Check your Progress 2

Fill in the blanks with appropriate words/phrases:

- i) Aristotle's father was a \_\_\_\_\_.
- ii) \_\_\_\_\_ is considered the earliest surviving work of Greek dramatic theory.
- iii) Aristotle founded the \_\_\_\_\_ on the lines of Plato's Academy.
- iv) Alexander was the prince of \_\_\_\_\_.
- v) It is believed that Aristotle wrote about \_\_\_\_\_ treatises.

---

## 4.3 POETICS: TEXT

---

### 4.3.1 Background — *Poetics* (335 BCE)

Aristotle reacted against Platonism in all areas of knowledge. Aristotle's work on aesthetics consists of *Poetics*, *Politics* and *Rhetoric*. He divides human activity into three areas: thought (*theoria*), action (*praxis*) and production (*poiesis*). The *Poetics* was lost to the Western world for a long time and restored in the Middle Ages and early Renaissance only through a Latin translation of an Arabic version. At some point during antiquity, the original text of the *Poetics* was divided into two, each book written on a separate roll of papyrus. Today, only the first part which focuses on tragedy and epic survives, while the lost second part addresses comedy.

### 4.3.2 Imitation

Aristotle believed that the instinct of imitation is basic to all processes of learning. His concept of imitation is different from that of Plato's. *Mimesis* or imitation is an active aesthetic process. He says, "Imitation is given us by nature and men are endowed with these gifts, gradually develop them and finally create the art of poetry". All forms of poetry are forms of imitation, but the poet differs from the historian because "it is not the function of the poet to relate what has happened, but what may happen—what is possible according to the law of probability or necessity". He describes it further: the poet should prefer probable impossibilities to improbable possibilities".

### 4.3.3 Poetry

Aristotle believes that poetry as a genre can be distinguished in three ways:  
a) Matter: The matter of poetic creation is made up of language, rhythm and

melody.

b) Subjects: Aristotle differentiates between tragedy and comedy by distinguishing between the nature of human characters that people them. Hence, he believes that tragedy deals with serious, important and virtuous people. Comedy treats of less virtuous people and focuses on human “weaknesses and foibles”. Hence, characters may be superior to the audience, inferior to the audience or at the same level.

c) Method: One may imitate the agents through use of a narrator or use actors to speak the lines directly. Both tragedy and comedy use the latter. Aristotle clearly defines the double function of poetry: teaching and providing pleasure.

### ❖ Check your Progress 3

Answer in one sentence:

- i) What does Aristotle divide human activity into?
- ii) What should the poet prefer?
- iii) What are the three ways in which poetry can be distinguished?
- iv) What is the double function of poetry?
- v) What is the function of the poet?

---

## 4.4 A. TRAGEDY

---

A quick look at the table of contents page, according to a library copy, has five basic parts:

- i) Preliminary discourse on tragedy, epic poetry and comedy as the chief forms of imitative poetry.
- ii) Definition of a tragedy, and the rules for its construction. Definition and analysis.
- iii) Rules for the construction of a tragedy, catharsis, denouement etc.
- iv) Possible criticisms of an epic or tragedy and the answers to them.
- v) Tragedy as artistically superior to epic poetry

In a very well-organised manner, Aristotle begins by telling us what he proposes to do.

Aristotle’s definition of tragedy is still considered a very important and clear definition of the genre. He says: “Tragedy is a representation of a serious, complete action which has magnitude, in embellished speech, with each of its elements used separately in the various parts of the play and represented by people acting and not by narration, accomplishing by means of pity and terror the catharsis of such emotions”.

From this definition, we can draw out the chief characteristics that Aristotle considered essential for a good tragedy. To enumerate:

- i) Plot (*mythos*) This can be described as “organisation of incidents” and can be simple or complex. A complex plot would have reversals and recognitions. Actions should follow logically from a situation created before and/or from the character.
- ii) Character (*ethos*) In a perfect tragedy, character will support the plot, which means personal motivations and traits will connect parts of the cause-and-

effect chain of the plot and also produce pity and fear. The main character should be good, appropriate and consistent.

iii) Thought (*dianoia*) The spoken reasoning of human characters which can explain the characters or the background to the audience.

iv) Diction (*lexis*) Speech or language which would reflect the character of those on stage.

v) Melody (*melos*) Music-dance or the role of the chorus and is an important factor in the pleasure of drama.

vi) Spectacle (*opsis*) To Aristotle, this was the “least artistic” part of the play. It refers to sets, props, costumes etc.

---

#### **4.4 B. PARTS OF A TRAGEDY (IN DETAIL)**

---

Plot: Aristotle discusses the structure of the ideal tragic plot over many chapters. He calls plot “the soul of the tragedy”. The plot must be a complete whole with a definite beginning, middle and end. Its length should be such that the spectators can comprehend without difficulty both the parts and the whole with its overall unity. The plot requires a single, central theme in which all the elements are logically related to clearly show the change in the protagonist’s fortunes. By magnitude, Aristotle means length. There should be an emphasis on the dramatic causation and probability of the events. The plot is intended to illustrate matters of cosmic rather than individual significance (which is in direct contrast to Shakespearean tragedy where the tragic flaw assumes central position and significance). We can see that the major difference between modern drama and Greek drama is that Greek tragedians placed greater stress on the development of plot and action at the expense of character. There seemed to be a general lack of interest or ability in exploring psychological motivation. Unity refers to the centring of all action around a common theme or idea. Determinate structure follows from unity, which means it should never move away from the central spine: he did not approve of episodic plots. The best tragedies have complex plots which will have reversal and recognition and will lead to a catharsis. The best plot has both reversal and recognition simultaneously and this involves fear and pity. A tragedy must have “complication” and “resolution”. Complication is “everything from the beginning up to and including the section which immediately preceded the change of fortune”. The resolution is “everything from the beginning of the change of fortune to the end”.

Tragedy can be divided into quantitative parts, which are different from component parts. The quantitative parts are: prologue, episode, finale and choral parts which include entry-song and ode.

Character: An ideal protagonist should be “a man who is highly renowned and prosperous, but one who is not pre-eminently virtuous and just, whose misfortune, however, is brought upon him not by vice or depravity but by some error of judgement or frailty; a personage like Oedipus”. The four things essential in the construction of a character: goodness or the moral essence of a character’s disposition and actions; appropriate, must have likeness or similarity and he must be consistent, even while inconsistent he must be “consistently inconsistent”.



Thought: It is everything that is effected by means of language. When agents try to prove or disprove a point, to arouse emotion, to inflate or deflate a matter, they are exhibiting thought. Thought is closely related to rhetoric and Aristotle deals with this in his later writings.

Diction: Aristotle is concerned more with spoken language and not written language. Hence, he deals with the sound of a letter and not the written character. Diction, he divides into eight parts—letter, syllable, conjunction, article, noun, verb, case and speech which seem identical to our modern uses of them. Aristotle deals with the uses of metaphor in great detail. Metaphor cannot be taught: it can only be grasped intuitively. A certain level of genius is required to identify similarities between dissimilar things. In this section, he also deals with style. According to him, a poet should aim for a middle ground which is expressing himself with clarity but not meanness. Everything should be in moderation.

Melody and Spectacle: Though plays are meant to be seen and not merely read, Aristotle ranks these two as being lower than the others. They are the source of intense pleasure which cannot be found in an epic.

#### ❖ Check your progress 4

Match the words/ phrases in Column A with appropriate ones in Column B:

A	B
i) Lowest in tragedy	a) Length
ii) Thought	b) Contrast to Shakespearean tragedy
iii) Cosmic significance	c) Melody and spectacle
iv) Plot	d) Related to rhetoric
v) Magnitude	e) Soul of tragedy

---

## 4.5 EPIC

---

Epic poetry is one of the five forms of poetry that Aristotle examines in *Poetics*. To him, epic poetry and tragedy are similar as well as dissimilar: “Of their constituent parts some are common to both, some peculiar to tragedy. Whoever, therefore, knows what is good or bad in tragedy, knows also about epic poetry. All the elements of an epic are found in tragedy, but the elements of a tragedy are not all found in the epic poem”. While the mimesis of tragedy is in actions told in a dramatic form, the mimesis of epic poetry is in verse told in a narrative form. As it is a purely narrative medium it is limited only by the imagination of the poet and the listener. Also, there is no help in visualising with backdrops etc. or stage props. Tragedy is superior to epic in many respects but mostly because tragedy leads to catharsis. Though epic poetry can produce emotion in the reader, tragedy produces fear and pity which are required for catharsis. Aristotle cites Homer’s *Iliad* and *Odyssey* as examples of epic poetry and we can see that Aristotle is a great admirer of Homer. The use of the marvellous is more acceptable in an epic because “invisible to the eye in epic, its improbability passes unnoticed; but visibly seen on stage, it appears absurd”.

The plot may be similar in both but the length of the story in an epic poem is not subjected to the limits of time and place. So, an epic poem must have limited length but unlimited fictional time may be covered by it. Tragedy

becomes superior to the epic because “the concentrated effect is more pleasurable than one which is spread over a long time and so diluted”.

#### ❖ Check your progress 5

State whether True or False:

- i) Length of a story in epic is subjected to limits of time and space.
- ii) All the elements of epic are found in tragedy.
- iii) Tragedy is superior to epic.
- iv) Epic produces fear and pity.
- v) Use of backdrops help the writer of epic.

### 4.6 CORE TERMS

- i) Anagnorisis—recognition, identification
  - ii) Catharsis—purgation, purification, clarification
  - iii) Hamartia—tragic flaw
  - iv) Hubris—pride
  - v) Mimesis—imitation, representation
  - vi) Nemesis—retribution
  - vii) Peripeteia—reversal
  - viii) Unity of time, place and action
- (other terms have been explained in the section on tragedy)

#### ❖ Check your Progress 6

Explain in one sentence the following terms:  
Catharsis, Peripeteia, Mimesis, Hubris, Hamartia

---

### 4.7 CONCLUSION

Aristotle’s *Poetics* is a seminal work in the history of literary theory and criticism and is supposed to have been influential on later writers. Before Aristotle, no one had attempted to write about the good and bad of literature. The *Poetics* may not have been widely known during the Hellenistic and Roman periods. As translations of the Greek text were done into Syriac and Arabic, very early commentaries were done. The early commentaries seemed to impose morality on Arabic poetic tradition by using Aristotelian theory. The Italian Renaissance saw commentators suggest that Aristotelian poetic theories be used as the sole key to approaching human sciences. At the end of the eighteenth century with the Romantic movement, there seems to be a strong reaction against Aristotle and his commentators. However, several critical schools in the twentieth century which favour a more impersonal, systematic and structural approach to literature and criticism are strongly indebted to Aristotle’s idea of poetics.

---

#### 4.8 Let us Sum Up

---

In this Unit you have learnt: \*Importance of Aristotle's *Poetics*

- His definition of tragedy and its constituent parts
- His analysis of Epic as a genre \*Important Greek terms

---

#### 4.9 KEY WORDS

---

Tragedy, epic, mimesis, catharsis, kinds of poetry, functions of poet and poetry

---

#### 4.10 SUGGESTED READING

---

Unlocking Aristotle's *Poetics*: A Reader's Guide

Stephen Halliwell: *Aristotle's Poetics* B Prasad: *A Background of English Literature*

#### ❖ Answers

##### Check your Progress 1

i) True ii) False iii) True iv) False v) True

##### Check your Progress 2

i) Physician ii) *Poetics* iii) Lyceum iv) Macedonia v) 200

##### Check your Progress 3

i) Aristotle divides human activity into three areas: thought (*theoria*), action (*praxis*) and production (*poiesis*).

ii) The poet should prefer "probable impossibilities" to "improbable possibilities".

iii) The three ways in which poetry can be distinguished are matter, subject and method.

iv) The double functions of poetry are teaching and providing pleasure.

v) The function of the poet is to relate not what has happened but what may happen.

##### Check your Progress 4

A	B
i) Lowest feature of tragedy	i) Melody and spectacle
ii) Thought	ii) Related to rhetoric
iii) Cosmic significance	iii) Contrast to Shakespearean tragedy
iv) Plot	iv) Soul of tragedy
v) Magnitude	v) Length

### **Check your Progress 5**

i) False ii) True iii) True iv) False v) False

### **Check your Progress 6**

i) Catharsis: From Greek “kathairein” meaning to cleanse or purge—to describe the release of emotional tension that spectators experienced while watching dramatic tragedy.

ii) Peripeteia: From Greek, meaning reversal or the turning point in a play after which the plot steadily moves towards its denouement, or to Aristotle, the shift of the tragic protagonist’s fortune from good to bad which is essential to the plot of the tragedy.

iii) Mimesis: From Greek, meaning to imitate—it is the process by which art mimics, reflects and reinterprets the world around us.

iv) Hubris: From Greek, it means arrogance or excessive pride, a human trait which taken to extremes can be the cause of their ultimate downfall.

v) Hamartia: From Greek “hamartanein” which means “to err”. It is the tragic flaw of the protagonist which ultimately leads to the character’s downfall.

**:: STRUCTURE ::****5.0 Objectives****5.1 A Biographical Study of Graeco-Roman Criticism****5.2 The Significance and Meaning of On the Sublime****5.3 Its Fragmentary Nature; Its Critical Analysis; Its Plan****5.4 Critical Synopsis: Definition and Explanation of Sublimity****5.5 Techniques / Devices Discussed in the Chapter****5.6 Sublime: Nature and Definition; Sublimity and Loftiness in Writing****5.7 Let Us Sum Up****5.8 Keywords****5.9 Books Suggested / Further Readings****❖ Check Your Progress**

---

**5.0 OBJECTIVES**

---

- Understanding the uncertainty of date and authorship
- The significance and meaning of 'On the Sublime'
- Its fragmentary nature; its critical analysis
- Its plan
- Definition and explanation of sublimity
- Sublimity and loftiness in writing

---

**5.1 A BIOGRAPHICAL STUDY OF GRAECO-ROMAN CRITICISM**

---

Criticism has various meanings such as judging, justifying, and judiciously commenting on or appreciating a work of art. The classical meaning of criticism is *krisis*. Criticism may be practiced in different ways such as separation, selection, editing, modification, elimination, and many other forms. Literary practices can be judged when readers and intellectuals read such works and evaluate them.

In ancient times, many practices were conducted by city and state intellectuals. Since the origin of literature and literary criticism, the Greeks had to judge and select from plays and poetry. Readers selected plays and poems to read and criticize. There was categorization at the level of quality: poetry was considered good or bad. If a work was unethical, it was regarded as low in quality; if it was considered good, it was linked with the ethical quality it contained. Creativity and criticism were understood as deep interior parts of significant works.

Initially, Homer was regarded as a Greek figure connected with epics. Afterwards, Virgil and Milton followed the same tradition of writing epics. Dionysius Longinus was a Greek critic and the minister of Zenobia. Robertello presented the work *On the Sublime* and associated it with Longinus in 1554. Previously, there was a belief that the treatise was written by Caecilius, who must have belonged to the first century A.D. The treatise consists of ideas about oratory and its general features—good and bad. The decline of eloquence was a burning topic of the age.

---

## **5.2 THE SIGNIFICANCE AND MEANING OF *ON THE SUBLIME***

---

A similar effect was achieved by the lawgiver of the Jews—no mean genius, for he both understood and gave expression to the power of the divinity as it deserved—when he wrote at the very beginning of his laws, and I quote his words: “God said,”—what was it?—“Let there be light, and there was. Let there be earth, and there was.” These are lines from *On the Sublime* (9.9). The work contains the power of divinity. Longinus begins with “God said,” and then quotes the words, “Let there be light and there was. Let there be earth and there was.” Thus, the work starts with a spiritual note.

Though there are many gaps and extensive indented writing in *On the Sublime*, nobody denies that it is genuinely of grandeur quality. The work seems to be addressed to Terentianus, who might be a friend or a student. Longinus discusses falsities in sublimity of writing and identifies what contributes to sublime writing: grandeur of concept, intensity of emotion, the appropriate use of figures, good quality of jargon and diction, and dignity and altitude of word order.

The main theme is discussed from psychological, technical, and rhetorical points of view, with proper arrangement of elaborate words. Longinus tells Terentianus that he wrote this treatise to modify the faults of Caecilius and wrote an essay on the sublime with some preliminary observations.

---

## **5.3 ITS FRAGMENTARY NATURE; ITS CRITICAL ANALYSIS; ITS PLAN**

---

The writer addresses his friend Terentianus about the faults of Caecilius’s work. The work of Longinus seems to be fragmented. He observes that sublimity is a matter of excellence and expertise, and it deals with immortality. If the work is sublime, the author is immortal. Sublimity carries a person

beyond his limits. It is like a flash of lightning, necessary to appear at intervals to throw light into darkness.

There are assumptions that sublimity is a matter of inborn potential and capacity. It is believed that sublimity is a lesson of nature, and nature teaches its pupils in the best way without putting pressure. At the same time, Longinus emphasizes that art must control sublimity: "The expression of the sublime often needs the spur, but it also needs the curb which is put by art alone."

There are shortcomings in art if it is not sublime. Such writing may show low language, nervousness, hyperboles, pomposity, and frigidity. Longinus provides strong arguments when explaining true sublime and false sublime. True sublime pleases everyone because it contains true ideas and thoughts with loftiness of expression and tone. False sublime is affected, pompous, external, and lacks loftiness of ideas.

---

#### **5.4 CRITICAL SYNOPSIS: DEFINITION AND EXPLANATION OF SUBLIMITY**

---

The important sources of sublimity are grandeur of concept, intensity of emotion, the appropriate use of figures, good quality of jargon and diction, and dignity and altitude of word order. Sublimity decides that the more we read, the more we get the "juice" of its grandeur, and it never seems boring. True sublime pleases all and pleases always. False sublime may appear high in quality, yet it conceals nothing but emptiness.

Lofty writing, strong indispensable passion, and vigorous treatment are basic uses of figures of thought and language as well as expression. Noble diction includes the proper arrangement of words. Great thoughts are the outcome of great souls. Wise, systematic, and coherent arrangement of words is an outcome of skillful organization.

Longinus distinguishes between amplification and sublimity through thoughts and systematic arrangement of patterns of writing. He appreciates the means of sublimity and also denounces good and bad styles of writing. He promotes elevation of style and the essence of simplicity. At the same time, the effects of the sublime may include loss of rationality and an alienation leading to identification. Overall, the sublime contains certain limitations.

Special expertise that generates sublime work includes great thoughts, because great thoughts are the outcome of higher conception. Those with shallow thinking and weak motives will not achieve higher things. Skillful, wise, and systematic selection of words and their combination is important. Augmentation is an integral part of sublimity. Sublimity is often comprised of a single thought and gives extension to a subject. Augmentation is a matter of excellence, and the writer should consider whether a particular idea can be expressed without adhering to imitation. Figures of speech may be employed and utilized by genius in the right manner. "Art lies in concealing art." A figure is best when "the very fact that it is a figure escapes attention."

---

## 5.5 TECHNIQUES / DEVICES DISCUSSED IN THE CHAPTER

---

Longinus discusses the use of figures and stylistic techniques that contribute to sublimity when used appropriately. Common figures include adjuration or apostrophe, which is an effective appeal or address to stir emotions. Adjuration deals with translation or putting a different word in a different way. Apostrophe refers to personification as an important factor in language. Questions and answers make language more emphatic and notable, and their tone makes a sharp impact on readers.

Asyndeton consists of removing conjunctions to add emphasis and force. Julius Caesar famously used it: “Veni, Vidi, Vici” (“I came, I saw, I conquered”). Anaphora is the repetition of words, as shown through examples in dramatic dialogue. Diatyposis is a rhetorical device for prescribing rules or doctrines, stamping out ideas with vigour, cogency, and beauty in speech.

Hyperbaton is a figure of speech in which the usual order of words is switched. Longinus connects such techniques to the idea that “art is perfect when it seems to be nature, and nature hits the mark when she contains art hidden within her.” Polypoton is the rhetorical repetition of a word in a different case, inflection, or voice in the same sentence. Periphrasis adds beauty to language.

Longinus emphasizes noble diction and sublimity. “Beautiful words are the very light of lofty thought.” Inappropriate magnificence of diction should be avoided. Trivial subjects should be treated in a grand manner. Proper diction and words should be arranged well with harmonious arrangement. A sentence contains its own organic structure arising from harmony. Low and undignified vocabulary disfigures and degrades sublimity. Excessive conciseness tends to mar the sublime, while over-exaggeration makes the style lifeless, contributing to the decline of truly great literature.

On metaphors, he notes that a number of metaphors can be used together at frequent intervals. Similes and hyperboles are also discussed in connection with harmonious arrangement of words. Longinus also remarks that it is characteristic of human nature to find faults with the present.

---

## 5.6 SUBLIME: NATURE AND DEFINITION; SUBLIMITY AND LOFTINESS IN WRITING

---

The sublime is understood as elevation and loftiness that raises style above the ordinary and gives distinction. In the earliest Greek masterpieces, this distinctive feature is prominent, though your notes also state that such distinction is lacking in his works. Sublimity, according to Longinus, is “a certain distinction and excellence in composition.” R. A. Scott-James stated that Longinus is the first Romantic critic. Longinus compares false sublime with true sublime.

Sublimity and loftiness in writing depend on the sources of the sublime: grandeur of concept, intensity of emotion, appropriate use of figures, good quality of jargon and diction, and dignity and altitude of word order. Longinus is presented as the author of the treatise *On the Sublime*, and also described as the minister of Zenobia, with time noted as first century after Christ (and also



as fl. c. 250 A.D. in your notes). *On the Sublime* is presented as a great work of significance and a critical document of the Graeco-Roman period. The central theme is the discussion of a work of art, its vices and good qualities. Longinus says that “a genius with some faults is a hundred times better than a flawless mediocre.”

The work is fragmentary. Longinus states sublimity is excellence, linked with immortality, carrying a person beyond limits, like lightning that flashes and illuminates. He repeats that art must curb sublimity: “The expression of the sublime often needs the spur, but it also needs the curb which is put by art alone.” He distinguishes amplification and sublimity through thought and systematic arrangement and denounces good and bad styles. He promotes elevation and simplicity, while also noting limitations such as loss of rationality and alienation leading to identification.

In conclusion, your notes state that the sublime is achieved when literature is written in a way that takes one beyond one’s limits. Burke is mentioned in the sense that the sublime is not the beautiful, but something that carries one out of one’s capacity. Rather than merely convincing the reader, the reader is persuaded and controlled by the work.

---

## 5.7 LET US SUM UP

---

Longinus’s *On the Sublime* is a significant critical document of the Graeco-Roman period. It discusses sublimity as distinction and excellence in composition and explains the sources of the sublime through grandeur of thought, intensity of emotion, appropriate figures, noble diction, and dignified arrangement of words. The work is fragmentary yet valued for its grandeur. Longinus distinguishes true sublime from false sublime and emphasizes that sublimity needs both natural power and artistic control.

---

## 5.8 KEYWORDS

---

Criticism, *krisis*, Graeco-Roman criticism, sublimity, sublime, loftiness, grandeur of thought, intensity of emotion, figures of speech, figures of thought, diction, word order, arrangement, metaphor, simile, hyperbole, augmentation/amplification, apostrophe, adjuration, asyndeton, anaphora, diatyposis, hyperbaton, polyptoton, periphrasis, true sublime, false sublime, decline of eloquence.

---

## 5.9 BOOKS SUGGESTED / FURTHER READINGS

---

- *Critical Survey of Literary Theory* — Humanities Reference PN 45 .C74 1987.
- Daiches, David. *A Critical History of English Literature*. Allied Publishers, Hyderabad. First Indian reprint 1979.
- *Dictionary of Critical Theory* — Humanities Reference PN 98 .S6O77, 1991; edited by Frank N. Magill. Pasadena, Calif.: Salem Press, c1987. Level 5.
- Edward, Albert. *History of English Literature*. OUP fifth edition, third impression 2018.
- Ian Buchanan, Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2010. Leonard Orr. New York: Greenwood Press, 1991. Level 5.

- Tilak, Raghukul. *The History and Principles of Literary Criticism*. Educational Publishers, Karol Bagh, Bank Street, New Delhi. Print 1994.
- Wimsatt, William K., Jr. and Cleanth Brooks. *Literary Criticism: A Short History*. Routledge and Kegan Paul, London. Print 1970.

### ❖ Check Your Progress

Q.1 Elaborate the theory of the sublime and justify it with the ideologies of Longinus.

Q.2 Is the theory of “sublimity” truly emphasizing the supreme literature?

Q.3 Write examples of sublime literature and explain the theory of the sublime in your own words.

Q.4 Explain the sublime and the divine at the same time. Is it possible?

Q.5 Write a detailed note on Longinus as a critic of classics.

**:: STRUCTURE ::**

- 6.1 Objectives**
- 6.2 Learning Outcomes**
- 6.3 Introduction**
- 6.4 Background Information on Sir Philip Sidney**
- 6.5 Summary of Sir Philip Sidney's *An Apology for Poetry***
- 6.6 Importance of Analysing *An Apology for Poetry***
- 6.7 Historical Context When *An Apology for Poetry* Was Written**
- 6.8 The Purpose of *An Apology for Poetry***
- 6.9 The Defence of Poetry Against Philosophical Attacks**
- 6.10 The Importance of Poetry for Society**
- 6.11 The Place of Poetry Among Other Forms of Knowledge**
- 6.12 Sidney's Refutation of Objections to Poetry and Poets**
- 6.13 The Structure of *An Apology for Poetry***
- 6.14 Examination of the Three Parts of the Text**
- 6.15 Use of Rhetorical Strategies by Sir Philip Sidney**
- 6.16 Key Themes in *An Apology for Poetry***
- 6.17 The Role of Imagination in Poetry**
- 6.18 The Relationship Between Poetry and Truth**
- 6.19 The Importance of Poetry in Moral Education**
- 6.20 Objection to the Idea that Poetry is Superior to Prose**
- 6.21 Critics on *An Apology for Poetry***
- 6.22 Reasons Why *An Apology for Poetry* Deserves Continued Attention**
- 6.23 Conclusion**
- 6.24 Key Points for Revision**
- ❖ Check Your Progress**

---

## 6.1 OBJECTIVES

---

- Understand the major concepts presented in Sidney's *An Apology for Poetry*.
- Discuss the various issues raised by Sidney in the text.
- Explore the importance of the work in the context of English criticism.
- Identify the relevance and influence of Sidney's doctrine in the history of English criticism.

---

## 6.2 LEARNING OUTCOMES

---

Upon completion of this unit, you should be able to:

- Articulate the key ideas and arguments presented by Sidney in his work.
- Evaluate the influence and relevance of *An Apology for Poetry* in English criticism and literature as a whole.
- Connect Sidney's notions about poetry to broader themes in literature and society.

---

## 6.3 INTRODUCTION

---

The art of poetry is a form of expression that has captured the hearts and minds of individuals for centuries. Regardless of background, people have found solace and meaning in the words and emotions conveyed through poetry. Sir Philip Sidney, in his essay titled *An Apology for Poetry*, examines the significance of poetry as an art form and explains why it should be valued. In his opening paragraph, Sidney lays the foundation for his argument by stating that poetry is not only beautiful but also necessary and useful. He invokes the belief that the purpose of poetry is not only to entertain but also to instruct and educate, and to capture and convey the nature of humanity and its struggles. He emphasizes the importance of poetry in shaping society by acting as a source of moral guidance. Sidney claims that, unlike other forms of literature, poetry has the power to portray emotions and experiences vividly in ways that cannot be conveyed through ordinary speech. Through these insights, Sidney highlights the relevance of poetry as a means of creative expression essential to capturing human experience. By setting the context in this manner, Sidney lays the groundwork for his elaborate defense of poetry and the value it presents to society.

---

## 6.4 BACKGROUND INFORMATION ON SIR PHILIP SIDNEY

---

Sir Philip Sidney (1554–1586) was an English poet, critic, courtier, and soldier during the Elizabethan era. He was born into a prominent family and received a classical education at Shrewsbury School and Oxford University. Sidney was known for his chivalrous and courtly manners, as well as his intellectual pursuits.

Sidney's most famous work is the pastoral romance *Arcadia*, which he wrote in the 1580s. The work tells the story of two princes, Pyrocles and Musidorus,

who wander through a mythical land called Arcadia. It is known for its complex plot, its use of classical mythology, and its exploration of themes such as love, friendship, and honor.

In addition to *Arcadia*, Sidney wrote several other works, including *Astrophil and Stella*, a collection of sonnets that explores the theme of unrequited love. Sidney's sonnets are known for their technical skill and emotional depth. Sidney was also involved in politics and served as a member of Parliament. He was a staunch supporter of Queen Elizabeth I and fought in her army. Sidney died in 1586 at the age of 31 from wounds sustained in battle.

Sidney's works were highly influential in the development of English literature. His use of classical mythology and his exploration of themes such as love and honor were widely imitated by later writers. His work also helped to popularize the sonnet form in English poetry.

---

## **6.5 SUMMARY OF SIR PHILIP SIDNEY'S *AN APOLOGY FOR POETRY***

---

*An Apology for Poetry*, written by Sir Philip Sidney, is a defense of poetry, which he believed had come under scrutiny during the Elizabethan era. In this essay, Sidney argues that poetry is "the sister of philosophy" and a necessary component of any advanced culture. He believes that poetry has the ability to educate, inspire, and entertain people, making it an integral component of human life.

Sidney also addresses the criticism that poetry is frivolous and lacks moral value. He contends that poetry is capable of providing moral guidance through its use of character and story, adding that poets can convey moral lessons indirectly by making them accessible to a wider audience. Furthermore, Sidney defends poets who write about imaginary or fantastical elements, stating that these elements are necessary for poets to express themselves creatively. Overall, *An Apology for Poetry* is an important work that helped to affirm the status of poetry as a valuable literary genre that continues to be studied and appreciated.

---

## **6.6 IMPORTANCE OF ANALYZING *AN APOLOGY FOR POETRY***

---

Analyzing Sir Philip Sidney's *An Apology for Poetry* is important because it helps readers understand the poet's thoughts, discourse, and purpose in writing this defense of poetry. The text serves as a response to criticisms and attacks against poetry prevalent in Sidney's time. Through the *Apology*, he seeks to dispel these notions and highlight the true value of poetry.

By examining the *Apology*, one can understand Sidney's views on the function and role of poetry, as well as its superiority over other literary forms. Additionally, the work's structure and language provide insight into the cultural context and literary style of Elizabethan society, making it valuable for scholars of Renaissance literature. Furthermore, analyzing the *Apology* can assist in understanding Sidney's personal beliefs and controversies, as he interweaves his opinions on various poets and literary trends throughout the text. Ultimately, *An Apology for Poetry* not only defends the art form but also

advocates for the poet's role in society, making it a significant work that deserves careful attention and examination.

Sidney asserts that poetry is not only a source of entertainment and pleasure, but also a means of moral instruction and political persuasion. He believes that poetry has the power to move and transform its audience, making it an effective tool for shaping the values and beliefs of society. As an example, Sidney points to the works of Horace and Virgil, who promoted ethical values and national pride through poetry. In addition, he argues that poetry can unite the beauty of language and the wisdom of philosophy, creating a combination that can inspire and educate at the same time.

Sidney also defends poetry against the charge that it is a source of moral corruption and licentiousness. He claims that this accusation results from taking isolated instances of vulgar or obscene poetry out of context, rather than considering poetry as a whole. Overall, Sidney's *Apology for Poetry* presents a defense of poetry against its detractors and argues for a nuanced understanding of poetry that considers its diversity and complexity rather than reducing it to a few negative examples.

---

## **6.7 HISTORICAL CONTEXT WHEN AN APOLOGY FOR POETRY WAS WRITTEN**

---

The historical context in which *An Apology for Poetry* was written is important, as it sheds light on the community in which Sir Philip Sidney lived and the societal norms he was expected to follow. Sidney lived during the Elizabethan era, a time when artistic expression was highly valued and poetry was considered a high form of literary achievement. However, it was also a period when Puritanism was rising, and many people viewed the arts with suspicion and contempt.

Despite this climate, Sidney was determined to defend the value of poetry and clarify its connection to virtue. His text was written during a time of political uncertainty, as England faced threats to its security, including conflict with Spain and fears of invasion. In this climate, Sidney sought to present a vision of a stable, ordered society that could be supported through the power of poetry. His *Apology* was also a response to growing criticism of literature, which many considered morally corrupt and a threat to social order. By advocating the moral and societal benefits of poetry, Sidney hoped to answer these criticisms and reaffirm the value of the arts in English society.

In addition to defending poetry against accusations of falsehood and immorality, Sidney addresses its utility in society. He argues that poetry is not only entertainment but also education. Poetry, he argues, teaches and instructs people in a way that prose cannot because poetry captivates and moves its audience through emotional and imaginative appeal. Sidney also highlights the role of poets in shaping the moral fabric of society, as poets can inspire virtue and shape ethical outlook through the power of words. He emphasizes the universality of poetry, arguing that it transcends boundaries of language and culture and speaks to fundamental human experience. For this reason, he contends that poetry is accessible to all who seek it.

---

## **6.8 THE PURPOSE OF AN APOLOGY FOR POETRY**

---

Sidney states that the ultimate purpose of *An Apology for Poetry* is to defend poetry and elevate it to the esteem it deserves. He argues that poetry is not only entertainment but has the ability to educate and teach moral and ethical values. While some might consider poetry a frivolous pursuit, Sidney counters that it is a necessary and valuable tool for communicating complex ideas in an accessible way.

Poetry, according to Sidney, has the power to move its audience emotionally, inspiring action or deep contemplation. He argues that poetry can not only stir emotions, but also direct them toward the greater good. In essence, Sidney's *Apology* is a defense of poetry as an art form and an assertion that it deserves a place among intellectual pursuits. By explaining the nature and purpose of poetry, Sidney challenges those who dismiss it and calls upon audiences to recognize the importance of poetic expression in human experience.

---

## **6.9 THE DEFENSE OF POETRY AGAINST PHILOSOPHICAL ATTACKS**

---

Sidney's *An Apology for Poetry* is presented as not only a defense of poetry but also a philosophical work that defends the use of imagination against traditional philosophical attacks on it. Sidney contends that Aristotle's view of imagination as mere *phantasia* and Plato's conception of the material world as a copy of the intelligible world do not do justice to imagination. The power of imagination, according to Sidney, is not only the faculty that creates fiction but also the faculty that connects the material and intelligible worlds.

The poet's imagination is not merely the power to create a "mist" but also the power to illuminate and clarify truth. It is not an impediment to reason but a necessary ingredient for it. Without imagination, understanding reality would be limited to superficial appearances. Sidney's defense of poetry is thus connected to a humanist view of reality that sees the world as a complex combination of sensuous and intelligible aspects. Poetry, in this view, is not merely entertainment but an essential part of human knowledge and understanding, bridging the material and the spiritual, the visible and the invisible, the finite and the infinite, the known and the unknown.

---

## **6.10 THE IMPORTANCE OF POETRY FOR SOCIETY**

---

One of the most important aspects of poetry is its ability to convey messages to society. Throughout history, poets have used poetry to express beliefs, values, and ideals, and to engage audiences in conversations about society. Through metaphors, allegories, and symbols, poetry can communicate complex ideas in a way that is accessible and powerful. In this sense, poetry can serve as a medium for promoting social change and advocating social justice.

Poetry is also a source of cultural identity and national pride. By celebrating traditions, values, and histories, poetry strengthens the bonds of community and fosters a sense of belonging among readers. Finally, poetry is a means of personal expression and self-discovery. By exploring thoughts, emotions, and experiences through poetry, individuals connect with their inner selves. Through its ability to communicate messages, promote social change, foster

cultural identity, and support personal growth, poetry remains an important art form and an essential part of human experience.

---

### **6.11 THE PLACE OF POETRY AMONG OTHER FORMS OF KNOWLEDGE**

---

Sidney asserts that poetry has a unique place among other forms of knowledge. While disciplines such as history and philosophy offer information, poetry goes beyond facts and provides deeper understanding. Sidney argues that poetry captures both external reality and internal experience. Through poetry, readers engage with emotional and psychological realities not fully captured by other disciplines.

Poetic language and imagery enable the communication of truths in ways that are beautiful and profound. Poetry can renew wonder and imagination, allowing readers to experience the world anew. For Sidney, poetry is not merely aesthetic pleasure but a vital means of illuminating the human condition in its complexity. Thus, poetry holds a unique place because it captures the essence of the world and stimulates both intellect and imagination.

---

### **6.12 SIDNEY'S REFUTATION OF OBJECTIONS TO POETRY AND POETS**

---

Sidney refutes opposing views toward poetry and poets with several arguments. He emphasizes poetry's capacity to instill virtuous values in readers. Poetry serves as a conduit for ethical and moral wisdom by educating people through imagination. In this sense, poetry is not merely entertainment but a means of shaping the character and moral compass of society.

Sidney notes that poetry often depicts conflicts between good and evil and prompts readers to contemplate consequences. He emphasizes that the language of poetry has a unique power for conveying truth and beauty. Poetry can capture the essence of human experience and distill it into language that is eloquent, compelling, and memorable. Such language evokes strong emotions and shapes perspectives. Therefore, Sidney concludes that it is unfair to portray poetry as corrupt or poets as immoral. On the contrary, poets are presented as guardians of language and torchbearers of moral and ethical values in society.

---

### **6.13 THE STRUCTURE OF AN APOLOGY FOR POETRY**

---

The structure of *An Apology for Poetry* is notable for its consistent pattern of advancement and elaboration. Sidney introduces central arguments in the early part of the essay, sets out key characteristics of poetry, and defends its value against critics. As the text progresses, he develops these themes in greater detail and adds examples and evidence.

A notable feature is Sidney's use of digressions, in which he pauses from the main line of argument to address related issues or respond to potential objections. These digressions enrich and expand the central arguments and demonstrate his willingness to engage with complex ideas and opposing viewpoints. Overall, the structure reflects Sidney's commitment to a careful



defense of poetry and showcases his rhetorical skills and knowledge of poetic theory and history.

---

#### **6.14 EXAMINATION OF THE THREE PARTS OF THE TEXT**

---

In *An Apology for Poetry*, Sidney examines three parts of the text: historical, philosophical, and poetic. He argues that these parts work together to demonstrate poetry's role in shaping human experience. The historical section establishes the legitimacy of poetry as a serious academic subject, the philosophical section demonstrates the moral and ethical value of poetry, and the poetic section showcases the beauty and imagination within poetic language.

Sidney emphasizes that these three parts are interconnected and interdependent, as each reinforces the others. He contends that they are essential for the advancement of poetry as an art form because they provide a framework for understanding the complex nature of poetry and its contributions to society. Sidney's examination shows his appreciation of poetry's power to elevate and enrich human experience.

---

#### **6.15 USE OF RHETORICAL STRATEGIES BY SIR PHILIP SIDNEY**

---

A rhetorical strategy used by Sidney in *An Apology for Poetry* is sarcasm and irony. He uses these devices to criticize those who claim poetry is mere fantasy and has no practical value. Sidney suggests that if poetry were truly useless, it should be banned from courts and other places where people gather for entertainment. He argues that wise and powerful people throughout history have used poetry to teach moral and ethical lessons.

By using sarcasm and irony, Sidney highlights the hypocrisy of those who denigrate poetry while enjoying its benefits. He questions whether it is not better to read the works of Catullus or Ovid rather than the plays of Plautus or Terence, which were often bawdy and vulgar. The question is intended to show the moral superiority of poetry over other forms of literature. Sidney also uses sarcasm and irony to ridicule the notion that poetry corrupts young minds, arguing instead that the danger lies in the tendency of people to imitate what they see, regardless of the medium. In this way, Sidney defends poetry as a morally uplifting art form that can serve as a force for good in society.

Sidney also celebrates the power and beauty of poetry. Poetry, according to him, is not merely diversion but a tool for understanding and navigating the world. Through poetry, readers can experience emotions and ideas that might otherwise be abstract or overwhelming. Poetry transmits knowledge and wisdom across generations through stories and metaphors that resonate across cultures and time. Sidney presents poets as wise and virtuous figures capable of inspiring and guiding audiences through life.

---

#### **6.16 KEY THEMES IN AN APOLOGY FOR POETRY**

---

A key theme in Sidney's *An Apology for Poetry* is that poetry provides a moral and ethical foundation for society. Sidney argues that poetry can move

individuals toward virtuous actions and righteous behaviour. Poetry with moral teaching can guide individuals and provide direction and purpose.

Sidney also argues that poetry can challenge conventional wisdom and inspire individuals to question beliefs. Poetry can unearth truths and expose hypocrisy. Another theme is frustration with the low status of poetry in Sidney's time. Sidney contends that poetry has been unjustly maligned and treated as inferior compared to other academic disciplines. He concludes that poetry is as valuable and worthy of education as other subjects because it evokes emotions, inspires creativity, and challenges individuals to think critically.

---

## **6.17 THE ROLE OF IMAGINATION IN POETRY**

---

Sidney argues that imagination plays a crucial role in poetry. He states that poetry "wherein imagination hath wrought, doth bring forth that excellent order." Imagination enables poets to create well-structured poems that convey powerful messages or invoke certain feelings. Sidney believes imagination unlocks beauty and truth in the world.

Imagination allows poets to explore and express emotions, experiences, and observations creatively and powerfully. By using imagination, poets create vivid and memorable images and metaphors that remain with readers. Sidney's argument highlights the ability of poets to connect with readers on a deep emotional level, inspiring, challenging, and transforming understanding of the world.

---

## **6.18 THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN POETRY AND TRUTH**

---

Sidney discusses the relationship between poetry and truth in *An Apology for Poetry*. He believes poetry can express truth in a more imaginative, meaningful, and moving way than prose. He argues that poetry can sometimes convey truth better than history, philosophy, or theology.

According to Sidney, poetry allows poets to create a world of truth that is more beautiful, idealistic, and morally instructive than the real world. Poets use allegory, metaphor, and other figurative devices to represent complex truths of human experience that cannot be expressed directly. Sidney believes poetry shapes attitudes, values, and beliefs and serves as a means of exploring mysteries of the universe, the human condition, and the divine. Poetry is presented as a privileged way of discovering, expressing, and sharing truth beyond factual information.

---

## **6.19 THE IMPORTANCE OF POETRY IN MORAL EDUCATION**

---

Sidney emphasizes the importance of poetry in moral education. Poetry has the ability to stir emotions and imagination, which are essential for developing moral character. Through characters, stories, and themes, individuals learn virtues such as courage, compassion, and selflessness. Poetry provides examples of moral uprightness and encourages individuals to cultivate such qualities.

Sidney argues that poetry helps individuals contemplate complex moral issues and develop deeper understanding of ethical concepts. By presenting ethical dilemmas, poetry supports critical thinking skills necessary for moral

decisions. He also views poetry as offering moral instruction in an aesthetically appealing way through vivid language, sensory imagery, and other devices that make moral lessons more engaging and memorable.

The unit text also notes that in the sixteenth century literature gained recognition as art, with the rise of Petrarchan love sonnets, and that Sidney emerged as a significant figure with works such as *Astrophil and Stella* and *An Apology for Poetry*. In the *Apology*, Sidney presents arguments in favor of poetry and responds to criticisms against it. He argues that poetry serves a moral purpose by teaching virtues and guiding conduct, and he defends poetry's craft as a form of art requiring skill and talent, including mastery of language, rhythm, and metaphorical language.

---

## **6.20 OBJECTION TO THE IDEA THAT POETRY IS SUPERIOR TO PROSE**

---

Some would object to Sidney's assertion that poetry is superior to prose. While poetry can be appreciated for artistic merit, the claim that it is inherently better than prose is a matter of personal taste rather than objective truth. Prose can offer equal, if not greater, depth of content and complexity of thought. It would be unfair to dismiss great novelists such as Tolstoy or Joyce as inferior because they do not write in poetic form.

Additionally, there is a danger in elevating one form of literature above all others, as it can encourage a narrow view of valid literary expression. Ultimately, the value of poetry and prose lies in their ability to communicate meaning and evoke emotion, regardless of form. Rather than arguing for superiority, it is more productive to appreciate the unique contributions each makes to literature.

---

## **6.21 CRITICS ON AN APOLOGY FOR POETRY**

---

Despite praise for Sidney's *An Apology for Poetry*, some critics view it critically. One critique is that it promotes an unrealistic and idealistic view of poetry, setting unrealistic standards by presenting poetry as a medium that must always be pure and noble.

Some argue that Sidney's defense relies too heavily on classical tradition and overlooks flaws and limitations of poetry. Another criticism is that Sidney's definition of poetry is too narrow and does not account for many kinds of poetry and forms of expression. Critics also argue that his emphasis on morality overlooks great works that do not conform to strict moral standards. Finally, some contend that Sidney focuses too much on theoretical aspects and does not address practical issues that arise in creating art. Despite these criticisms, the text maintains that Sidney's *Apology* remains an important work of literary criticism.

---

## **6.22 REASONS WHY AN APOLOGY FOR POETRY DESERVES CONTINUED ATTENTION**

---

*An Apology for Poetry* deserves continued attention because it explains the relationship between poetry and reality. Sidney argues that poetry is necessary for intellectual and emotional development because it offers a more profound

understanding of the world than science or philosophy. Science can explain the mechanics of the material world, but it cannot provide meaning or evoke emotional responses in the same way poetry can.

Sidney also contends that poetry can represent the world in a way that is truer to life than other forms of representation. Poetry can capture the essence of an experience and convey it to an audience. Poetry can serve as a mirror reflecting the beauty and complexity of the world. Sidney's emphasis on both emotional and intellectual aspects makes his argument compelling. The *Apology* is a call to appreciate poetry and recognize its value in life, reminding readers that art can inspire, challenge, and teach.

---

## 6.23 CONCLUSION

---

Through his essay, Sir Philip Sidney defends poetry as a form of literature and highlights its ability to imitate and teach while also giving pleasure. Sidney argues that poetry is not only entertainment but also persuasion and education, making it valuable for society. He defends the poet's ability to inspire individuals imaginatively and remind them of their duties toward God and humanity.

Sidney argues that poetry enhances language and makes it more powerful, shaping and inspiring hearts and minds. The essay not only defends poetry but also shows how poetry contributes uniquely to art and literature. Sidney's tone throughout is apologetic and reverential toward poetry. He believes poetry "doth excel all others," and the unit notes that poetry continues to be embraced by readers and writers, making *An Apology for Poetry* a classic work that remains studied and appreciated.

---

## 6.24 KEY POINTS FOR REVISION

---

- Sir Philip Sidney was a significant figure in English literature.
- Sidney believed that poetry was necessary for any advanced culture.
- Poetry has the ability to educate, inspire, and entertain people.
- *An Apology for Poetry* helped affirm poetry's status as a valuable literary genre.
- The work provides insight into Elizabethan society's cultural context and literary style.
- Sidney defends poets who write about imaginary or fantastical elements.
- Poetry is essential for capturing human experience and personal self-discovery.
- Poets are guardians of language and moral values that instill virtue in readers.
- Poetry can promote social change and advocacy for social justice.
- *An Apology for Poetry* argues that poetry serves a moral purpose by teaching virtues and offering guidance on good conduct.
- Literature is not necessarily superior in one form over another; each has unique contributions to the world of literature.

- Critics argue that Sidney's *Apology* promotes an unrealistic view of poetry.
- Sidney emphasizes both emotional and intellectual aspects of poetry, making his argument compelling.
- Sidney defends poetry by highlighting its importance in imitating and teaching while also delivering pleasure.
- Sidney believes poetry can enhance language and shape and inspire hearts and minds.
- *An Apology for Poetry* reminds us how art inspires, challenges, and teaches more about ourselves than any other form of communication.

### ❖ Check Your Progress

#### (A) Short Questions

1. What is the central argument Sidney presents in *An Apology for Poetry*?
2. How does Sidney describe the role of the poet in society?
3. According to Sidney, what sets poetry apart from other forms of literature?
4. What role does morality play in Sidney's understanding of poetry?
5. How does Sidney's *An Apology for Poetry* reflect Renaissance thinking about literature?

#### Answers

1. Sidney argues in *An Apology for Poetry* that poetry is a valuable form of literature with a unique ability to teach and delight readers.
2. Sidney describes the poet as a "maker" or "creator," emphasizing the imaginative power of poetry to construct meaningful narratives and ideas.
3. Sidney argues that poetry uniquely blends pleasure and instruction, engaging readers in a way other forms of literature do not.
4. Sidney asserts that poetry has a moral purpose, offering lessons about virtue and the good life.
5. Sidney's *An Apology for Poetry* reflects Renaissance thinking in its focus on the creative power of the poet and its argument for the humanistic and moral value of literature.

#### (B) Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs)

1. What is the main purpose of Sir Philip Sidney's *An Apology for Poetry*?
  - a) To criticize the art of poetry
  - b) To defend the art of poetry against its detractors
  - c) To argue that poetry is deceitful
  - d) To promote other forms of art over poetry
2. According to Sidney, what is the origin of poetry?

- a) It was invented by the Greeks
  - b) It was created by the Romans
  - c) It has no clear origin
  - d) It evolved from human nature and experience
3. What are some criticisms of poetry that Sidney addresses in his essay?
- a) That it is a deceitful art
  - b) That it promotes vice
  - c) That it is unnecessary for human experience
  - d) Both a and b
4. How does Sidney counter criticisms of poetry?
- a) By arguing that it is a truthful art that promotes virtue
  - b) By claiming that it is unnecessary for human experience
  - c) By promoting other forms of art over poetry
  - d) By agreeing with the criticisms and suggesting poetry should be abandoned
5. According to Sidney, what is the significance of poetry in human experience?
- a) It is a luxury that only the wealthy can afford
  - b) It is an unnecessary form of entertainment
  - c) It is necessary for human experience and can inspire and uplift individuals
  - d) It is a harmful influence on society
6. Which statement best describes Sidney's view of the relationship between poetry and human nature?
- a) Poetry is a product of human nature and experience
  - b) Poetry has no relationship to human nature
  - c) Poetry is a form of escapism from human nature
  - d) Poetry is a means of controlling human nature
7. According to Sidney, what is the difference between poetry and history?
- a) Poetry is more truthful than history
  - b) History is more truthful than poetry
  - c) Poetry and history are equally truthful
  - d) Poetry and history are both deceitful
8. What does Sidney believe is the purpose of poetry?
- a) To entertain and amuse readers
  - b) To promote vice and immorality
  - c) To provide insight into the world and human nature
  - d) To distract readers from reality

9. Which statement best describes Sidney's attitude toward classical literature and philosophy?
- a) He considers them irrelevant to contemporary society
  - b) He believes they are the only sources of wisdom and knowledge
  - c) He believes they are valuable sources of inspiration and insight
  - d) He believes they are outdated and should be abandoned
10. What is the significance of the title "An Apology for Poetry"?
- a) It suggests Sidney is apologizing for writing poetry
  - b) It suggests Sidney is defending poetry against its detractors
  - c) It suggests Sidney is criticizing poetry
  - d) It suggests Sidney is promoting other forms of art over poetry

### Answers

- 1. (b)
- 2. (d)
- 3. (d)
- 4. (a)
- 5. (c)
- 6. (a)
- 7. (b)
- 8. (c)
- 9. (c)
- 10. (b)

### Try Yourself

- 1. Write a brief summary of the main arguments presented in *An Apology for Poetry*.
- 2. Write a paragraph explaining Sidney's views on the relationship between poetry and philosophy.
- 3. Write a paragraph explaining Sidney's views on the importance of poetry in society.
- 4. Write a paragraph explaining Sidney's views on the importance of the creative process in literature.
- 5. Write a paragraph explaining Sidney's views on the role of the poet in society.
- 6. Write a short essay discussing how *An Apology for Poetry* is relevant to contemporary literary criticism.
- 7. Write a paragraph explaining what you think is the most important idea presented in *An Apology for Poetry* and why.

## Works Cited

- Sidney, Philip. *An Apology for Poetry*. Oxford University Press, 2002.  
Bates, Catherine. *Philip Sidney: An Apology for Poetry*. Manchester University Press, 2008.  
Sidney, Philip. *The Defence of Poesy and Selected Renaissance Literary Criticism*. Penguin Classics, 2004.  
Sidney, Philip. "An Apology for Poetry." Poetry Foundation. <https://www.poetryfoundation.org/articles/69388/an-apology-for-poetry>. Accessed 15 May 2023.  
Sidney, Philip. "Philip Sidney's 'Apology for Poetry': A Critical Edition." Luminarium. <http://www.luminarium.org/renascence-editions/sidneyapology.html>. Accessed 15 May 2023.  
Sidney, Philip. *An Apology for Poetry*. Project Gutenberg, 2004. <https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/14623>. Accessed 15 May 2023.  
Hamilton, Albert Charles. *Sir Philip Sidney: A Study of His Life and Works*. Cambridge University Press, 1977



**:: STRUCTURE ::**

- 7.1 Unit Overview**
- 7.2 Objectives**
- 7.3 Learning Outcomes**
- 7.4 Introduction**
- 7.5 Background information about John Dryden and his work**
- 7.6 Overview of the *Essay of Dramatic Poesy***
  - 7.6.1 The four characters in the dialogue**
- 7.7 The concept of ancients versus moderns**
- 7.8 Explanation of the debate between the ancients and moderns**
- 7.9 Dryden's stance on the issue**
- 7.10 Significance of the controversy in the essay**
- 7.11 The three unities and their importance**
  - 7.11.1 How these unities influence the structure of dramatic works**
  - 7.11.2 Criticism of the three unities and how Dryden responds to it**
- 7.12 Reflections on the balance between nature and artifice in dramatic art**
- 7.13 The nature of tragedy**
  - 7.13.1 Dryden's definition of tragedy**
  - 7.13.2 His views on the emotional response of the audience to tragedy**
  - 7.13.3 Comparison of classical and modern tragedy**
- 7.14 The superiority of modern English drama (Shakespeare and Jonson)**
- 7.15 The role of the poet in society**
  - 7.15.1 Dryden's idea of the poet as a moral guide for society**

### 7.15.2 The influence of politics and religion on poetry

### 7.16 Reflections on the artistic nature of writing poetry

### 7.17 Imitation in poetry and drama

### 7.18 Conclusion

#### ❖ Key Points for Revision

#### ❖ Chek Your Progress

#### ❖ Answers

---

## 7.1 UNIT OVERVIEW

---

This unit introduces John Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* as a foundational text in Restoration literary criticism. It outlines the main arguments of the essay and the issues Dryden raises about dramatic form, judgement, and the standards by which plays are valued.

Dryden's method matters as much as his conclusions: he writes through a civil debate rather than a set of rigid rules. The unit, therefore, treats the essay as both a statement of critical principles and a record of the literary temper of the age, especially in the way it negotiates tradition and change.

---

## 7.2 OBJECTIVES

---

1. To introduce students to the major arguments presented by John Dryden in *Essay of Dramatic Poesy*.
2. To help students understand the historical and literary context of the essay.
3. To develop students' critical thinking skills through analysis and critique of plays using Dryden's principles of dramatic art.

### 7.3 Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Analyse the major arguments presented by Dryden in *Essay of Dramatic Poesy*.
2. Evaluate the relevance of Dryden's arguments to contemporary drama.
3. Develop an understanding of the historical and literary context of the essay.

---

## 7.4 INTRODUCTION

---

Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* is an important piece of writing in the history of literary criticism. It was published in 1668 and tries to understand what makes a good drama. The essay is written as a conversation between four characters who represent different ideas about literature. They talk about many things, like how poetry relates to other art forms, the writer's role in society, and how imitation works in drama. Dryden uses ideas from Aristotle's

*Poetics*, but he also introduces his own ideas about drama, like how good writing should be politically relevant.

One of the main ideas in the essay is the importance of the audience in understanding a play. Dryden and the other characters believe that the audience's interpretation is just as important as the writer's intention. The essay deals with many questions that are still important to thinkers today, and it is considered a precursor to modern literary theory.

The dialogue form gives Dryden room to test positions without turning the essay into a sermon. By letting competing views speak at length, he shows how critical judgement is made through comparison, example, and measured disagreement, rather than through a single authority laying down final laws.

---

## **7.5 BACKGROUND INFORMATION ABOUT JOHN DRYDEN AND HIS WORK**

---

John Dryden was one of the most significant literary figures of the Restoration era. He was born in Aldwincle, Northamptonshire, England, in 1631 and educated at Westminster School and Trinity College, Cambridge. He began his literary career as a playwright and later turned to poetry and prose. He became the Poet Laureate of England in 1668, a position he held until his death.

Dryden's work was influenced by both the classical and contemporary literature of his time. His poetry often focused on political and social issues, but he also wrote deeply personal and heartfelt poetry, particularly after the death of his wife. His most famous works include *Absalom and Achitophel*, a satirical poem that criticised King Charles II's political opponents, and *Annus Mirabilis*, a poem that celebrated England's naval victory over the Dutch in 1665. Along with his work as a poet, Dryden was also a successful playwright, writing plays such as *The Indian Queen* and *All for Love*.

His essay, *An Essay of Dramatic Poesy*, was published in 1668 and is considered a masterpiece of literary criticism. In this essay, Dryden compares the modern English theatre to the ancient Greek and French theatres, arguing that the English theatre is just as capable of producing great art as its European counterparts.

Dryden's career makes him a particularly useful critic of drama because he writes as a practising dramatist, not as a detached theorist. His remarks on stagecraft, audience response, and poetic language grow out of theatre as a living institution, shaped by performance, fashion, and public taste.

---

## **7.6 OVERVIEW OF THE *ESSAY OF DRAMATIC POESY***

---

Dryden begins his essay by introducing the four friends who are having a conversation about the merits of ancient versus modern drama. He also sets up the framework for the essay by stating that he will defend English drama against the classical norms of French drama.

The essay moves by a series of comparisons: ancient and modern, French and English, rule and freedom, judgement and pleasure. This structure allows Dryden to weigh claims rather than merely assert them, and it keeps the discussion tied to practical questions about what works on the stage.

### 7.6.1 The four characters in the dialogue

In Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy*, there are four characters who engage in a dialogue about the merits of ancient versus modern drama. These characters are:

1. **Eugenius:** Eugenius is a character in the essay who represents Dryden's own views on the subject. He argues in favour of English drama and believes that it is superior to classical drama. Eugenius is presented as a well-read and knowledgeable critic who is able to defend his views with examples from English literature.
2. **Crites:** Crites is a character in the essay who represents the views of Sir Robert Howard, a contemporary playwright and critic. He argues in favour of classical drama and believes that it is superior to English drama. Crites is presented as a learned and articulate critic who can defend his views with examples from classical literature.
3. **Lisideius:** Lisideius is a character in the essay who represents the views of Charles, Earl of Dorset, a patron of the arts. He argues in favour of French drama and believes that it is superior to both English and classical drama. Lisideius is presented as a sophisticated and knowledgeable critic who can defend his views with examples from French literature.
4. **Neander:** Neander is a character in the essay who represents Dryden's attempt to reconcile the various viewpoints presented in the essay. He takes a moderate position and argues that English drama can be just as good as classical drama if it follows the principles of dramatic art. Neander is presented as a thoughtful and balanced critic who is able to see the merits of different forms of drama.

Through the dialogue between these four characters, Dryden presents a range of arguments and perspectives on dramatic poesy. Each character represents a different viewpoint and contributes to the overall debate about the merits of different forms of drama.

The speakers are not simply "mouthpieces"; they also represent habits of mind in criticism. Crites leans towards authority and rule, Lisideius towards polished regularity, Eugenius towards national pride and experiment, and Neander towards balance and compromise, so that the debate can move without collapsing into mere party spirit.

---

## 7.7 THE CONCEPT OF ANCIENTS VERSUS MODERNS

---

Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* provides readers with an exploration of the concept of ancients versus moderns. Dryden believed that the ancients had the advantage of a long literary tradition and could not be surpassed in the perfection and beauty of their works. However, he also acknowledged that modern writers had the advantage of innovative ideas and new perspectives that were not available to the ancients.

Dryden urged writers to emulate the ancients in their careful attention to craft and form, but also to incorporate their own unique voices and ideas into their works. Dryden believed that both the ancients and the moderns had contributed greatly to the literary canon and that a balance should be struck

between the two. Through his discussion of the ancients versus moderns, Dryden encourages readers to consider the importance of tradition and innovation in literature and to recognise the valuable contributions of both past and present writers. His ideas continue to resonate with scholars and readers today, underscoring the enduring relevance of his literary criticisms and creative insights.

The point of the opposition is not merely to choose a side, but to ask what “excellence” means in art. Dryden treats ancient authority as a standard of workmanship, while allowing modern writers the liberty to adapt form to new audiences, new manners, and new subjects.

---

## **7.8 EXPLANATION OF THE DEBATE BETWEEN THE ANCIENTS AND MODERNS**

---

The debate between the ancients and moderns has been an ongoing intellectual discourse for centuries. Proponents of the ancients, such as Plato and Aristotle, believed that classical literature should be the standard of literary excellence. They argued that the works of ancient Greek and Roman writers, such as Homer and Virgil, were perfect models of poetic form, language, and style.

On the other hand, supporters of the moderns, such as Dryden, believed that contemporary literature was superior. They argued that modern writers had the advantage of access to scientific knowledge and societal advancements, which allowed them to explore new themes and expressions in their works. Dryden specifically believed that contemporary drama was more refined and sophisticated than the dramas of the ancients. He argued that modern dramatists had surpassed the ancients in their treatment of character, plot, and language. The debate between the ancients and the moderns centres around the question of whether classical literature holds the key to literary excellence or whether modern authors should be given the freedom to explore new themes and ideas.

In the Restoration setting, this debate also becomes a question of taste and public culture: whether the stage should follow inherited models of order or respond to the changing city audience. The controversy therefore touches not only literature, but also the authority of tradition in an age that had recently seen political rupture.

---

## **7.9 DRYDEN’S STANCE ON THE ISSUE**

---

Dryden’s stance on the issue of the superiority of ancient versus modern playwrights is rather unbiased yet enlightening. While he does acknowledge the merits of the ancients and their impact on the development of drama, he also appreciates the moderns who have taken the art form to greater heights. He argues that, although the rules and guidelines laid down by the ancients cannot be ignored, they should not be followed strictly and without any form of innovation. Instead, one must adapt them to suit the modern sensibilities and tastes of the audience.

Dryden’s *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* is not just a defence of English drama but also a plea for creativity and innovation. He believes that while imitation has its benefits, the art of drama must also involve invention and originality. He concludes by saying that there must be a balance between respect for the past

and an openness to future possibilities. This, he says, is the only way to ensure that drama remains a dynamic and relevant art form for generations to come.

His moderation is central: he avoids treating rules as fetters, yet he refuses to praise novelty for its own sake. What he defends is an intelligent freedom—freedom guided by judgement, by knowledge of precedent, and by attention to what theatre actually achieves in performance.

---

## 7.10 SIGNIFICANCE OF THE CONTROVERSY IN THE ESSAY

---

The controversy presented in Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* is significant because it showcases the different views on poetry and the importance of reason and imagination in the creative process. The four friends—Eugenius, Crites, Lisideius, and Neander—passionately express their opinions on the dramatic works of their contemporary playwrights and, in doing so, provoke a discussion that delves into the very essence of what makes for great literature.

The key themes that are explored in this controversy include the role of the public in judging good poetry, the value of imitation versus originality, and the ideal way a playwright should represent his or her characters. Dryden uses this debate as a vehicle to expound his own theory of dramatic poesy, which seeks to strike a balance between the rules of classical French drama and the imaginative, creative freedom of English drama. The significance of this controversy lies in its ability to encourage critical thinking and the recognition of various perspectives on poetry, which, in turn, enriches our understanding of the arts and their cultural significance. The ongoing debate between the 'classicists' and the 'modernists', of which Dryden's essay is a precursor, stands as a testament to the enduring relevance of this intellectual exercise.

Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* is a significant work of English literary criticism that provides insightful analysis and evaluation of various aspects of dramatic poetry. Dryden's skilful use of several characters, including Eugenius, Crites, Lisideius, and Neander, as well as the overall structure of the work, effectively presents the different perspectives on dramatic poetry and allows for constructive and stimulating debate. Dryden's emphasis on the importance of poetry's emotional impact and its ability to evoke empathy and morality remains relevant to contemporary literary discussions. Moreover, his defence of rhyme as an essential element of poetry has influenced many poets and scholars. Despite some of its limitations, Dryden's work reflects a deep understanding and appreciation of the art of poetry and drama. It also provides a glimpse into the literary discourse and intellectual trends of the Restoration period.

The controversy is significant because it turns criticism into a public act of reasoning: claims are tested against examples, and taste is defended with argument. In that sense, the essay shows criticism becoming part of literary culture itself, not merely a set of private preferences.

---

## 7.11 THE THREE UNITIES AND THEIR IMPORTANCE

---

The three unities are an essential aspect of dramatic poetry, highlighting the importance of unity, coherence, and cohesion in art. The unity of time emphasises the use of a single day's events in the play, ensuring that the audience does not lose track of the storyline. The unity of place emphasises the use of a single location, making the audience feel present in the play's setting and adding to their overall engagement. The unity of action emphasises the use of a single plot, allowing the playwright to develop the story without the need for multiple subplots, which can often confuse the audience.

These three unities are crucial in creating a sense of coherence and cohesion in the play, helping the audience stay engaged and focused on the story. Dryden believes that adherence to these unities can create a more powerful and effective piece of art, while violating them can lead to a weaker and disjointed performance. The three unities serve as a guide for playwrights and actors, reminding them of the importance of each aspect of their work. The three unities play a crucial role in creating powerful and effective dramatic poetry, turning it into an art form that can inspire and move audiences.

Dryden's discussion of the unities is also a way of asking how far the stage should imitate real time and real space. Even when he values order, he keeps the practical end in view: clarity, intelligibility, and a sustained hold on the audience's attention.

#### **7.11.1 How these unities influence the structure of dramatic works**

Dryden argues that the unities of time and place serve as devices that influence the structure and construction of dramatic works. By limiting the action of a play to a single day and a single location, the playwright is forced to carefully choose what events to include in the plot and how to develop them. This results in a focused and concise play that is not bogged down by extraneous or irrelevant details.

The unity of action further contributes to the structural integrity of a dramatic work by ensuring that all the events and characters in the play are necessary to the development of the plot. Characters are not introduced to the audience purely for the sake of filling space or providing exposition. Instead, each character and event serves a purpose in advancing the story and engaging the audience. This approach to dramatic structure results in a play that is not only entertaining but also intellectually stimulating. Dryden concludes that by incorporating these unities into their works, playwrights can create plays that are both aesthetically pleasing and thematically meaningful. In doing so, they elevate the art of drama to a level of intellectual and artistic sophistication that can rival any other form of literature.

In practice, the unities tighten cause and effect: scenes appear less like episodes and more like steps in a single pressure of action. When time and place are restricted, attention shifts to motive, choice, and consequence, which is why Dryden associates unity with force and coherence.

#### **7.11.2 Criticism of the three unities and how Dryden responds to it**

Another important topic within Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* is the three unities, which include the unity of time, place, and action. Many critics during Dryden's time, such as Jean Chapelain, argued that adherence to these unities made for a stronger and more coherent play. On the other hand, critics like

John Dennis believed that these strict rules restrained the creativity of the playwright and made plays predictable and uninteresting.

Dryden responded to this criticism by acknowledging the potential dangers of adhering too strictly to the three unities. He argues that while these rules can make for a more logical and efficient play, they can also limit the creativity of playwrights. Dryden ultimately concludes that the three unities are useful guidelines to follow but should not be adhered to so strictly that they become a hindrance to the creation of an engaging and powerful play. Through his response to this criticism, Dryden demonstrates his understanding of the importance of balancing structure and creativity in the creation of dramatic works.

His reply keeps the unities in their place: valuable as aids to judgement, dangerous when treated as mechanical laws. For Dryden, a play fails not because it breaks a rule in the abstract, but because it loses probability, coherence, or emotional hold.

---

## **7.12 REFLECTIONS ON THE BALANCE BETWEEN NATURE AND ARTIFICE IN DRAMATIC ART**

---

Dryden argues that true dramatic art requires a perfect balance between nature and artifice. He contends that nature alone cannot produce a dramatic work that captures the interest and attention of an audience; rather, an artist must infuse it with artifice to enhance its power and beauty. Dryden also emphasises that a truly great work of drama must be able to speak to people of all times and places. He argues that the best way to achieve this is through the use of general, rather than specific, characters and situations.

By relying on generalities, the artist allows the audience to see themselves in the work and to relate on a deeper level. Dryden believes that dramatic art is one of the highest forms of artistic achievement, as it has the power to move people's emotions and thoughts. He maintains that drama is not just entertainment, but also a tool for education and social commentary. In his view, a truly great work of drama not only entertains, but also leaves a lasting impression on the hearts and minds of its audience. Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* offers a compelling argument for the importance of balance, universality, and meaning in the dramatic arts.

What Dryden calls "art" is not trickery but selection and shaping: the ordering of incident, the fitting of speech to character, and the control of pace. "Nature" supplies the matter; "artifice" supplies the form that makes the matter intelligible and affecting on the stage.

---

## **7.13 THE NATURE OF TRAGEDY**

---

Dryden explores the nature of tragedy. He argues that, unlike in comedy, tragedy must present serious and emotionally intense events. These events should involve characters of high status or personal importance whose fall from grace demonstrates the fragility and burden of life. Dryden emphasises that tragedy should aim to evoke pity and fear in the audience, as well as inspire moral reflection. He contends that tragedy should be a cathartic experience that enables the audience to confront difficult truths about the human condition.



Dryden further argues that the central figure in tragedy, the tragic hero, must be a complex and multi-dimensional character whose downfall is not just a result of his or her hamartia, but also his or her own character and choices. The tragic hero, in other words, must possess qualities that elicit the audience's admiration and empathy. The audience must be persuaded, through masterful writing and acting, that the tragic hero could have made different choices and avoided his or her downfall. Additionally, Dryden posits that tragedy must have a happy ending, or a resolution that restores moral order and balance to the world. Dryden's ideas on tragedy emphasise the emotional and moral power of theatre and the importance of thought-provoking and socially relevant art.

Tragedy, as the essay frames it, is also a test of dramatic probability: the downfall must arise from character and circumstance, not from accident alone. The force of the form lies in making suffering intelligible, so that pity and fear are not mere sensation but a means of moral reflection.

### **7.13.1 Dryden's definition of tragedy**

According to Dryden, tragedy is a serious play that aims to arouse pity and fear in the audience to purge their emotions. He argues that tragedy is superior to comedy because of its gravity and noble characters. He defines tragedy as a representation of a serious, complete, and probable action that is not accompanied by a happy ending and involves suffering and downfall of the protagonist due to the tragic flaw or hamartia.

Dryden emphasises the role of catharsis in tragedy, which is the process of cleansing or purifying the emotions of the audience for a better understanding of the human condition. He believes that catharsis is achieved through the pity and fear evoked by the play, and that tragedy teaches us moral and ethical values. He also highlights the importance of unity in tragedy, both in terms of action and time, to maintain its coherence and effectiveness. Dryden's definition of tragedy sets the standards for a successful and impactful tragedy, and many of his ideas still resonate in modern drama. His belief in the significance of catharsis and the educational function of tragedy continues to influence the way we experience and appreciate this genre of literature.

In this definition, the stress falls on "probable action", which links tragedy to judgement as much as to feeling. A tragic plot must persuade the audience that what happens could have happened, given the sort of persons involved and the pressure of the situation.

### **7.13.2 His views on the emotional response of the audience to tragedy**

In relation to the emotional response of the audience to tragedy, Dryden notes that the Greek tragedies aimed to present emotions that could be universally felt and understood by the audience. This was primarily because the Greeks believed in the concept of catharsis, where tragic dramas were meant to cleanse the audience's soul of negative emotions, such as pity and fear.

Dryden, however, does not completely agree with this approach, as he believes that audiences are not always able to fully emotionally connect with the characters and the situations they find themselves in. In his opinion, the audience may not feel the same level of emotional intensity as the characters on stage and, as a result, may not be fully affected by the tragedy. Rather than focusing solely on eliciting an emotional response from the audience, Dryden

suggests that the main priority should be to present characters that are real and relatable. This means that instead of promoting a cathartic release, the audience should be left with something to think about and reflect on long after the performance has ended. Dryden's views on the emotional response of the audience to tragedy highlight the need for a balance between evoking emotions and presenting relatable characters that have the power to provoke deeper reflection and contemplation.

This emphasis on the audience also brings tragedy close to questions of representation: what kind of character will carry belief, and what kind of suffering will move without seeming forced. Dryden's concern is that emotional effect must be earned through credible motive and recognisable human response.

### **7.13.3 Comparison of classical and modern tragedy**

The discussion on tragedy in the essay explored the differences between classical and modern tragedy. According to the four speakers, classical tragedy aims to cleanse the soul of the audience by presenting the downfall of noble characters, while modern tragedy focuses on appealing to the audience's emotions through the downfall of ordinary characters. They also noted that classical tragedy adheres to the three unities of time, place, and action, while modern tragedy allows more flexibility in terms of narrative structure and setting.

One significant example of modern tragedy is Shakespeare's play *Hamlet*, which combines elements of both classical and modern tragedy. While the play follows the traditional structure of a classical tragedy, it also explores the emotional complexity of the protagonist and other characters, which appeals to modern audiences. The speakers agreed that both classical and modern tragedy have their own merits and that it ultimately comes down to personal preference. The dialogue presented in the essay reflects seventeenth-century English society's admiration for the classical period while also acknowledging the evolving trends in dramatic literature.

The comparison also exposes a difference in dramatic interest: the classical model values regularity and restraint, while the modern model is read as freer in incident and wider in emotional range. The essay uses this contrast to argue that "modern" need not mean careless, and "classical" need not mean lifeless.

---

## **7.14 THE SUPERIORITY OF MODERN ENGLISH DRAMA (SHAKESPEARE AND JONSON)**

---

One of the main arguments of Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* is the superiority of modern English drama over its classical Greek and Roman counterparts. Dryden argues that modern drama is more complex and nuanced, and better reflects the complexities of human nature. He specifically praises the works of Shakespeare and Ben Jonson and argues that their plays are superior to those of the ancient Greeks and Romans.

Unlike classical drama, which focused solely on external action and did not delve into the inner lives of its characters, modern English drama explores human psychology and emotions in a much more complex way. Dryden also argues that the English theatre has developed its own unique forms and styles and should not be viewed simply as an inferior copy of classical drama. He

particularly admires the way in which English playwrights have mixed elements of tragedy and comedy, and argues that this new genre, known as tragicomedy, is a superior form of drama. Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* is a strong defence of the English theatre and an important contribution to the ongoing debate over the nature and purpose of drama.

Dryden's praise is selective: he does not claim that every English play is better than every classical one, but that English dramatists have strengths the ancients did not cultivate in the same manner. Shakespeare is valued for breadth and natural force, Jonson for judgement and craft, and the pairing itself suggests Dryden's broader preference for strength tempered by art.

---

## **7.15 THE ROLE OF THE POET IN SOCIETY**

---

The final point that Dryden makes about poetry is that it serves an important role in society. He argues that poets have a responsibility to provide moral guidance and to inspire their audiences to live virtuous lives. According to Dryden, the best poets are those who can not only entertain their readers but also educate and enlighten them.

He believes that poets are the "unacknowledged legislators of the world", meaning that they help to shape the values and beliefs of society through their works. Dryden also contends that the poet's role is to tell the truth, even if it is uncomfortable or unpopular. He argues that poets are uniquely positioned to shed light on the problems and contradictions of their society and to challenge the status quo. In this way, poetry can be a catalyst for social change and progress. Dryden's views on the role of the poet in society reflect his belief in the power of literature to shape and influence culture. He sees poetry not only as a form of entertainment but also as a means of communicating important ideas and values. Dryden argues that the best poetry is that which both entertains and enlightens, and which contributes to the betterment of society as a whole.

This claim about responsibility fits the Restoration moment, when writing was closely entangled with public argument. To speak of poets as guides is also to assume that literature participates in forming judgement, not merely reflecting private feeling.

### **7.15.1 Dryden's idea of the poet as a moral guide for society**

Dryden's idea of the poet as a moral guide for society is a recurring theme in his *Essay of Dramatic Poesy*. He highlights the importance of the poet's role in not only entertaining the audience but also educating and instructing them through his works. In the essay, Dryden argues that poets have the ability to use their art to reflect the values and norms of society, and that they have a responsibility to ensure that these values are upheld.

He views the poet as a kind of mediator between the audience and society, using his art to bridge the gap between the ideal and the real. By portraying characters and situations that are morally upright, the poet can inspire his audience to aspire to similar ideals and adopt them as their own. Dryden argues that this is particularly important in his own time, as he views literature as a means to combat the moral decay and corruption that he sees as rampant in society. By using his art to uphold virtue and encourage ethical behaviour, the poet can play a critical role in shaping the moral landscape of his society.

Dryden's idea of the poet as a moral guide affirms the poet's responsibility to his audience and his society and highlights the importance of literature as a tool for social change.

The moral function is therefore tied to representation: drama and poetry show actions and consequences in a form the mind can carry away. The poet does not preach in abstract terms; rather, moral meaning is carried through character, choice, and the felt outcome of events.

### **7.15.2 The influence of politics and religion on poetry**

In addition to discussing the merits of ancient versus modern drama, Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* also touches upon the influence of politics and religion on poetry. Commenting on Ben Jonson's plays, Dryden notes that their "morals are the same as those of the church" (line 17), implying that Jonson's work aligns with the dominant religious and political values of his time. However, Dryden argues that this adherence to tradition can be limiting for writers.

He praises Shakespeare's ability to transcend societal expectations and create art that is both timeless and relevant, writing, "He paints the passions in their extremes, nature and reason only guiding him, and seldom, or never, giving the spur to fancy" (lines 37–38). This emphasis on the individual artist's imagination over external influences of politics and religion foreshadows the Romantic movement, which would reject the strictures of neoclassicism and celebrate subjective experience.

Dryden's comments on the impact of politics and religion on poetry underscore the shifting cultural attitudes of his time. While the Restoration period saw a return to traditional values and modes of expression, the seeds of a more individualistic artistic philosophy were being planted. As Dryden himself notes, the truly great artists are those who can harness both tradition and innovation to create something new and enduring.

The passage makes a further point about constraint: when writing is expected to mirror official morals, the range of representation can narrow. Dryden's admiration for Shakespeare here rests on the belief that the passions, presented fully, are themselves a kind of truth that outlasts temporary alignments of party and doctrine.

---

## **7.16 REFLECTIONS ON THE ARTISTIC NATURE OF WRITING POETRY**

---

Dryden also argues that poetry is not just a representation of reality but an imitation of the world that has the capacity to create something entirely new. Poetry can help us understand our world in a way that other forms of writing cannot. It can capture the sublime, the ineffable, and the profound in human experience. It speaks to our emotions and senses in ways that no other medium can, evoking images, sounds, and impressions that elicit a response in us that is beyond what words can express.

It is not just a reflection of reality, but a creative interpretation of it that takes us to new, unexpected places and allows us to see the world from a different perspective. In this sense, poetry is not just an art form but a way of thinking, an approach to life that sees beauty and meaning in everything around us. Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* is a testament to the enduring appeal of

poetry and its power to transform how we view ourselves and the world. His reflections on the artistic nature of writing poetry remind us that poetry is not just entertainment but a reflection of the human experience that has the power to move us, inspire us, and challenge us to see the world in new and unexpected ways.

Dryden's emphasis on imitation does not reduce poetry to copying; it implies choice, pattern, and heightened expression. The "newness" of poetry lies in the ordering of experience into form—rhythm, image, and argument—so that what is familiar can be felt as significant.

---

### 7.17 IMITATION IN POETRY AND DRAMA

---

In addition to analysing the various components of dramatic poetry, Dryden also addresses the issue of imitation in his *Essay of Dramatic Poesy*. He argues that the best poets are those who imitate nature, not necessarily in a literal sense, but by drawing inspiration from reality and human nature. Dryden also distinguishes between the imitation of nature and the imitation of other poets, stating that the latter is inferior and leads to a decline in poetry.

He acknowledges the importance of learning from the works of great poets but argues that imitation should not be the end goal. Instead, poets should strive to create their own unique style and voice. Dryden further criticises the strict adherence to classical rules and conventions, stating that they can stifle creativity and lead to mediocrity. He advocates a more flexible approach to poetry, where poets are free to experiment and push the boundaries of traditional forms. In this way, Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* promotes a progressive and innovative approach to poetry, emphasising the importance of individuality, creativity, and the imitation of nature.

Imitation, in this sense, becomes a discipline of observation: the poet studies manners, passions, and speech, and then refashions them into a coherent design. What matters is not the mere presence of "nature", but its shaping into an action that holds together and speaks beyond the immediate occasion.

---

### 7.18 CONCLUSION

---

Dryden in his *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* has presented a comprehensive argument in favour of English drama alongside his evaluation of classical drama. Dryden's views on the nature, functions, and style of drama have not only served as a mirror to his contemporary theatrical scene but have influenced future English playwrights of the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries.

Dryden's essay is not just a narrative of the English theatre; it is also a significant contribution to the aesthetics of drama. He skilfully defends the use of rhyme in dramatic verse and praises the English language as capable of expressing every kind of thought with elegance and harmony. Moreover, Dryden's advocacy of a distinctively English drama that could stand alongside the best of the classical ones has paved the way for the development of the English dramatic canon. Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* has thus earned a place as an important document in the history of English literary criticism, and his views remain relevant even today for those interested in understanding the evolution of English drama and literature.

The conclusion also shows Dryden's habit of holding opposites together: rule and liberty, learning and invention, ancient authority and present practice. The essay endures because it treats drama as an art judged both by principles and by its effect in the theatre.

---

## 7.19 KEY POINTS FOR REVISION

---

- John Dryden argues for the superiority of English drama over classical drama due to its ability to portray human nature realistically and offer social commentary.
- English drama introduced innovative stagecraft and theatrical devices, creating a more immersive experience for audiences.
- Imitation in drama is vital, allowing playwrights to represent life itself on stage accurately while portraying universal truths about humanity and society.
- Poetry plays a crucial part in elevating plays beyond mere entertainment, adding emotional depth and resonance to the dialogue.
- English plays are superior to those produced in France due to their richer plots and livelier characters.
- The use of imitation in drama provides a platform for discussion, reflection, and critical thinking about societal issues.
- Dryden's emphasis on unity reflected a broader trend in seventeenth-century literature where writers sought to use their work as a means of exploring complex ideas about society and human nature.
- Criticism allows readers to delve into literary works' nuances and subtleties, which would otherwise go unnoticed.

Taken together, these points show that Dryden's criticism is practical in spirit: it is concerned with what can be defended by reason and confirmed by theatrical experience. The key claims return repeatedly to the same test—whether a play achieves coherence, probability, and force upon the audience.

### ❖ Check Your Progress

#### Short Answer Questions

1. What are some of the major arguments presented by Dryden in *Essay of Dramatic Poesy*?
2. How does Dryden compare English drama to classical drama?
3. What is the role of poetry in drama, according to Dryden?
4. What are the classical unities of time, place, and action, and why are they important in drama?
5. How does Dryden value criticism in the development and appreciation of drama?

#### Answers

1. Some of the major arguments presented by Dryden in *Essay of Dramatic Poesy* include the superiority of English drama over classical drama, the importance of imitation in drama, the role of poetry in drama, the unities of time, place, and action, and the value of criticism.
2. Dryden believes that English drama is superior to classical drama in terms of plot, character, and language.
3. Dryden emphasises the importance of poetry in drama and believes that it should be used to elevate the language and express the emotions of the characters.
4. The classical unities require that a play should take place in a single location, over a short period of time, and with a single plot. They are important for creating a sense of coherence and unity in a play.
5. Dryden believes that criticism can help playwrights improve their work and can also help audiences appreciate the artistry of drama.

### **Multiple Choice Questions**

1. What is the main topic of John Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy*?
  - a) The history of English drama
  - b) The principles of dramatic art
  - c) The life of William Shakespeare
  - d) The development of theatre architecture
2. According to Dryden, what is the role of poetry in drama?
  - a) To provide comic relief
  - b) To elevate the language and express the emotions of the characters
  - c) To create complex plots
  - d) To entertain the audience
3. What are the classical unities of time, place, and action?
  - a) Principles that require a play to take place in multiple locations over a long period of time
  - b) Principles that require a play to take place in a single location over a short period of time with a single plot
  - c) Principles that require a play to have multiple plots
  - d) Principles that require a play to have a tragic ending
4. How does Dryden value criticism in the development and appreciation of drama?
  - a) He believes that criticism is unnecessary and harmful to playwrights
  - b) He believes that criticism can help playwrights improve their work
  - c) He believes that criticism should only be given by professional critics
  - d) He believes that criticism is only useful for historical analysis

5. What is one of the major arguments presented by Dryden in *Essay of Dramatic Poesy*?
- a) The superiority of classical drama over English drama
  - b) The importance of creating complex plots in drama
  - c) The value of realism in drama
  - d) The superiority of English drama over classical drama
6. How does Dryden compare English drama to classical drama?
- a) He believes that English drama is inferior to classical drama
  - b) He believes that English drama is superior to classical drama
  - c) He believes that English drama is different from classical drama but equally valuable
  - d) He does not make any comparison between English and classical drama
7. What is the purpose of the unities of time, place, and action?
- a) To create a sense of coherence and unity in a play
  - b) To allow for multiple plots and characters
  - c) To provide comic relief
  - d) To entertain the audience
8. What is the value of criticism, according to Dryden?
- a) It is unnecessary and harmful to playwrights
  - b) It can help playwrights improve their work and audiences appreciate the artistry of drama
  - c) It should only be given by professional critics
  - d) It is only useful for historical analysis
9. What is one way in which Dryden values poetry in drama?
- a) To provide comic relief
  - b) To elevate the language and express the emotions of the characters
  - c) To create complex plots
  - d) To entertain the audience
10. What is one way in which Dryden values coherence in drama?
- a) Through the use of multiple plots and characters
  - b) Through adherence to the classical unities of time, place, and action
  - c) Through the use of comic relief
  - d) Through entertaining the audience

**Answer Key**

- 1. b
- 2. b
- 3. b
- 4. b



5. d
6. b
7. a
8. b
9. b
10. b

A simple way to prepare for these questions is to keep each topic linked to one key claim: what Dryden defends, what he qualifies, and why he thinks the stage must finally be judged by its achieved effect rather than by rule alone.

### ❖ Check Your Progress

1. Write a brief summary of the main arguments presented in Dryden's *Essay of Dramatic Poesy*.
2. Choose one of the four characters in the essay (Eugenius, Crites, Lisideus, or Neander) and write a short essay explaining their perspective on dramatic poetry.
3. Compare and contrast Dryden's ideas about imitation with Aristotle's ideas about *mimesis* in his *Poetics*.
4. Write a paragraph explaining Dryden's views on the role of the writer in society.
5. Write a paragraph explaining Dryden's views on the relationship between poetry and other art forms, such as painting and sculpture.
6. Write a paragraph explaining Dryden's views on the importance of the audience in shaping the meaning of a play.

These tasks are best attempted by returning to the dialogue itself and noting how each speaker builds an argument: first by stating a principle, then by appealing to examples, and finally by answering objections. This method mirrors the essay's own movement and keeps the response grounded in its terms.

### Works Cited

- Dryden, John. *An Essay of Dramatic Poesy*.
- Syed, Afshan and Saxena, M. C. (2014). "Dryden as the father of English criticism", European Centre for Research Training and Development UK.
- Yilmaz, V. B. (2022). "An essay of dramatic poesy: Main frame of Dryden's literary criticism", *Manas Sosyal Araştırmalar Dergisi*.
- Christopher, Joe R. (2014). "A Day in the Life of a Hero: The Three Unities in C.S. Lewis's Neo-Classical Romance".
- Ochilova Bakhramovna. "John Dryden's Contribution to Classicism Drama".

**UNIT : 8****ALEXANDER POPE’S “AN ESSAY ON  
CRITICISM”****:: STRUCTURE ::****8.0 Objectives****8.1 Introduction****8.2 Understanding the Context****8.3 Three Parts of the Essay****8.3.1 Part I****8.3.2 Part II****8.3.3 Part III****8.4 Use of Heroic Couplets****8.5 Key Points of *An Essay on Criticism*****8.6 Memorable Quotes from *An Essay on Criticism*****8.7 Relevance of *An Essay on Criticism* in Contemporary Times****8.8 Questions****8.9 Let Us Sum Up****8.10 Keywords****8.11 Suggested Readings**

---

**8.0 OBJECTIVES**

---

In this Unit, you shall,

- Understand the context during which *An Essay on Criticism* was written
- Analyse in detail the content of the poem
- Discuss the form of heroic couplets in the poem
- Know the key points and the all-time memorable quotes of the poem

On completing the Unit, you should be able to

- Explore and analyse the key themes and ideas presented in Pope's poem
- Place Alexander Pope in the world of English literature

- Understand the form and structure of *An Essay on Criticism*
- Relate Pope to the contemporary times.

---

## 8.1 INTRODUCTION

---

Alexander Pope (1688-1744) was an eminent poet, satirist, and critic of the 18<sup>th</sup> century.

He was just 21 when he anonymously wrote *An Essay on Criticism* in 1709 and published it in 1711. At such a tender age in his first publication in book form, Pope was trying to tell something to those who were in the business of writing and critiquing. However, it is to the merit of the piece, and the argument of the poetic essay that it remains one of the most-quoted influential essays of all times, called ‘the masterpiece of its kind’ by Addison. The best tribute to the essay/poem was given by Johnson in *The Life of Pope*, who termed it as ‘one of the greatest though earliest’ and declared “if he (Pope) had written nothing else, would have placed him among the first critics and the first poets, as it exhibits every mode of excellence that can embellish or dignify didactic composition, selection of matter, the novelty of arrangement, justness of precept, splendour of illustration, and propriety of digression.”

The seminal essay is a significant literary work that exemplifies Pope’s expertise in poetic composition and offers a comprehensive guide to the principles of literary criticism. It presents his insightful views on the nature of art, the role of a critic, and the principles of good writing. With its memorable aphorisms and astute observations, Pope’s *An Essay on Criticism* has become a timeless and influential piece of literary criticism.

---

## 8.2 UNDERSTANDING THE CONTEXT

---

To fully appreciate Pope’s *An Essay on Criticism*, it is crucial to understand the literary and cultural climate of the time. The 18th century was a period of intellectual and artistic transformation known as the Age of Enlightenment, an age that saw the emergence of science and reason. The Age of Enlightenment, also known as the Age of Reason, was a period of intellectual and philosophical transformation that took place in Europe during the 17th and 18th centuries. It was characterized by a shift towards rationality, scepticism, and a focus on human reason and progress. Rationality and critical thinking were valued over superstition, tradition, and religious dogma. Thinkers believed that through reason, humans could understand and shape the natural and social world. The scientific discoveries and advancements of the preceding Scientific Revolution greatly influenced the Enlightenment as reason and empirical observation were being applied to all areas of human knowledge.

The period was called the Augustan Age in the time of Augustus in Rome which saw brilliant literature created and parallels were found in the writings of the 18<sup>th</sup>-century writers.

The essay emerged within the context of Neo-classicism, where literature and criticism were gaining prominence. Pope’s work reflects the ideas and debates of the era while also establishing his own unique perspective. All the features of neo-classicism can be found in the essay.

It is remarkable that it was for the poetic genius of Alexander Pope that the period between 1700-1750 is termed the Age of Pope.

### ❖ Check Your Progress 1

1. How was *An Essay on Criticism* a masterpiece of its age?

---

## 8.3 THREE PARTS OF AN ESSAY ON CRITICISM

---

Unlike its name, *An Essay on Criticism* is a poem written in heroic couplets. Through the poem, Pope has presented a criticism of literature and art. He has offered a critique on the art of writing through a kind of master class for the masters of writing and criticism, by telling them what is being a bad and a good critic and how one needs to rise above shallowness to become a good critic.

The poem is full of instructions and rules throughout and has been categorized into three parts. It elucidates various principles and guidelines for aspiring critics and writers.

### 8.3.1 Part I

Part I focuses on the nature and general principles of criticism. While writing about the nature of criticism, Pope defines the role of a critic as a guide rather than a dictator. He emphasizes the importance of humility and restraint in judging works of art and encourages critics to have a comprehensive understanding of the rules of composition.

The poem begins with the subject of the question of the supremacy of writing or judging. Pope looked at the problem of writing and judging and tried to juxtapose poetic genius and critical taste. The tension is presented in the first two lines of the poem:

“Tis hard to say, if greater Want of Skill  
Appear in *Writing* or in *Judging* ill”

Presenting the case of poets versus critics, and detailing what ails contemporary poets and critics, Pope writes:

“In poets as true genius is but rare,  
True taste as seldom is the critic's share”

Poets and critics, both are supposed to have a heavenly inspiration:

“Both must alike from Heav'n derive their light,  
These born to judge, as well as those to write.”

However, the problem is that poets are partial in their wit, but so are the critics in their judgment:

“There are, who judge still worse than he can write.”  
The master Pope goes on to declare that the faults of a critic are more dangerous than that of a poet.

“But, of the two, less dang'rous is th' offence  
To tire our patience, than mislead our sense.”

Citing the problem facing poets and critics, Pope declares that they are not able to have a comprehensive vision and they exhibit it in parts and pieces:

“So vast is art, so narrow human wit:  
Not only bounded to peculiar arts,  
But oft in those, confin'd to single parts.”

And another issue is related to wit and judgment:

“For wit and judgment often are at strife,  
Though meant each other's aid, like man and wife.”

The solution lies in going back to ancient classical authors, the Greek and Roman masters, i.e., the rules of writing and criticism set by them. Pope promotes the idea of imitating the works of ancient Greek and Roman writers, considering them the epitome of literary excellence. He advocates for studying and emulating the great poets of the past as a means of achieving mastery in one's own writing.

“Know well each ANCIENT'S proper character;  
His fable, subject, scope in ev'ry page;  
Religion, country, genius of his age:  
Without all these at once before your eyes,  
Cavil you may, but never criticise.”

Another piece of advice is to ‘follow Nature’ which is universal. However, immediately comes the suggestion to be flexible at the same time while doing so:

“First follow NATURE, and your judgment frame”  
You then whose judgment the right course would steer,  
Those RULES of old discover'd, not devis'd,  
Are Nature still, but Nature methodis'd;  
Nature, like liberty, is but restrain'd  
By the same laws which first herself ordain'd.”

Overall, in the first part of *An Essay on Criticism*, Pope emphasizes the importance of understanding one's limitations as a critic. He argues that critics should possess humility and strive to improve their own writing skills before they can effectively judge the works of others. Pope suggests that a critic should be well-versed in the literary traditions and rules, paying careful attention to the harmony and balance of language. He cautions against those who favour their own tastes over objective standards and highlights the importance of considering the intentions of the author when evaluating a work.

### ❖ Check Your Progress 2

After reading Part 1 of *An Essay of Criticism*, answer the following questions:

1. What problem does Pope identify in contemporary poets and critics?
2. What is Pope's idea of Nature as suggested in *An Essay on Criticism*?

3. 'Know well each Ancient'. What does Pope mean by 'ancient' in Part 1 of *An Essay on Criticism*?

### 8.3.2 Part II

Pope mentions the limitations of artists and the problem in judgments of literary works. Identifying the issues related to contemporary writers and critics, Pope writes:

“Of all the causes which conspire to blind  
Man's erring judgment, and misguide the mind”

While analysing the qualities of a poet and a critic, Pope warns of shallow knowledge of the topic in question:

“A little learning is a dangerous thing;  
Drink deep, or taste not the Pierian spring:  
There shallow draughts intoxicate the brain,  
And drinking largely sobers us again.”

The Pierian Spring has a reference to the Muses, the goddess related to arts in Greek mythology. Pope clarifies that surface thoughts are harmful.

The second part of the essay explores different forms and genres of poetry. Pope suggests that critics should familiarize themselves with the specific rules and structures inherent to each poetic form before making judgments. He discusses the value of consistency, unity, and coherence in poetic composition, advising against excessive ornamentation or verbosity. Pope emphasizes the significance of a natural and harmonious flow of words, arguing that a poet's style should reflect the subject matter and evoke the appropriate emotional response from the reader.

### ❖ Check Your Progress 3

After reading Part II of *An Essay of Criticism*, answer the following questions.

1. What does Pope explore in the second part of the essay?
2. How does Pope view the relationship between personal taste and objective standards in literary criticism?

### 8.3.3 Part III

The part emphasizes the importance of harmony and balance in literature. According to Pope, a harmony of parts is essential and he values the significance of coherence and unity in literary works. He discusses the importance of maintaining harmony among the various elements of a poem, including the theme, structure, and language, to create a coherent and pleasing whole.

While delineating the qualities of good writing and delving into it, Pope provides a set of guidelines for aspiring writers, highlighting the importance of clarity, consistency, and simplicity in their work. He accentuates the need for a harmonious balance between rules and creativity and cautions against excessive ornamentation and verbosity.

Pope suggests how to avoid problems and what should writers and critics do:

“Tis not enough, taste, judgment, learning, join;  
In all you speak, let truth and candour shine:...  
Be silent always when you doubt your sense;  
And speak, though sure, with seeming diffidence,  
The learn'd reflect on what before they knew:  
Careless of censure, nor too fond of fame,  
Still pleas'd to praise, yet not afraid to blame,  
Averse alike to flatter, or offend,  
Not free from faults, nor yet too vain to mend.”

Pope has examined the role of a critic and the dangers of personal biases and partiality. He argues that critics should strive to maintain objectivity and avoid personal animosity or favouritism towards particular writers. Pope highlights the importance of constructive criticism, suggesting that critics should point out both the strengths and weaknesses of a work. He cautions against the dangers of extreme praise or condemnation, advocating for a balanced approach that encourages improvement while recognizing the value of a creative expression. Pope concludes by underscoring the collaborative relationship between a critic and a writer, urging critics to offer guidance and support to help foster literary excellence.

#### ❖ Check Your Progress 4

##### Text-based Questions

After reading *An Essay of Criticism*, answer the following questions.

1. What does Pope discuss in the final part of the essay?
2. In the final part of the essay, what does Pope discuss about the role of the critic and the dangers of personal biases?
3. How does Pope advocate for a balanced approach to criticism that encourages improvement while recognizing the value of a creative expression?
4. What is the collaborative relationship between a critic and a writer, as emphasized by Pope in *An Essay on Criticism*?
5. What does Pope suggest about the role of harmony and balance in language in relation to criticism?
6. What advice does Pope offer regarding consistency and unity in poetic composition?
7. What does Pope emphasize as an important quality for critics to possess?
8. According to Pope, what should critics consider when evaluating a work?
9. What does Pope caution against in terms of ornamentation and verbosity in poetry?
10. What should a poet's style reflect, according to Pope?
11. How does Pope view the role of personal biases in criticism?
12. What approach does Pope recommend for critics in offering feedback to writers?

---

## 8.4 USE OF HEROIC COUPLETS

---

Pope's *An Essay on Criticism* consists of 744 lines of rhymed verse written in heroic couplets, a notable feature of the writing style of the author. A heroic couplet consists of two lines of rhymed iambic pentameter. Pope employs this form extensively throughout the essay, demonstrating his mastery of the technique.

The heroic couplets in *An Essay on Criticism* serve several purposes. Firstly, they provide a sense of order and structure to Pope's arguments. Each couplet encapsulates a concise and complete thought, allowing Pope to present his ideas with clarity and precision.

Moreover, the use of heroic couplets enhances the rhythmic flow of the poem. The consistent iambic pentameter creates a sense of musicality and harmony, engaging the reader and emphasizing key points. Pope's careful selection of rhyming words adds to the poetic appeal, creating a pleasing and memorable cadence.

The heroic couplet form also aids Pope in conveying complex ideas and criticisms. Through the concise nature of each couplet, he distils profound thoughts into a compact package. The rhyming couplets act as memorable units, making his arguments more memorable and impactful. Furthermore, the heroic couplets serve as a testament to Pope's wit and skill as a poet. He displays his ability to manipulate language and meter, employing clever wordplay and rhetorical devices within the tight constraints of the form. This demonstrates his mastery of the craft and adds to the overall artistry of the essay.

### ❖ Check Your Progress 5

1. How has the use of heroic couplets helped Pope in conveying his ideas more effectively?

---

## 8.5 KEY POINTS OF AN ESSAY ON CRITICISM

---

Alexander Pope's *An Essay on Criticism* encompasses several key points about literary criticism and the art of writing. Here are the main points discussed in the essay:

Pope emphasizes the importance of decorum in art, which involves the proper alignment of subject matter, style, and tone. He encourages writers to choose subjects that are appropriate to their abilities and to maintain a consistent tone throughout their work. Further, Pope stresses the significance of unity and consistency in literary compositions. He argues that a work should have a clear and central theme that is consistently developed throughout, avoiding digressions or extraneous elements.

A critic should be a guide and not a dictator. The critic's primary role is to help writers improve their work by providing constructive feedback and guidance. He warns against critics who are overly harsh or overly lenient, emphasizing the importance of balance and fairness in criticism. Valuing Nature, Pope argues that the principles of good writing and criticism are derived from nature. Nature serves as the ultimate standard against which literary works are judged. He suggests that writers should study and emulate the works of great poets from the past, who themselves drew inspiration from the natural world.



The idea of nature in Pope is different from the concept of Romantics which was developed afterward. To be a good critic, one needs to understand Nature as exhibited in the classics of the ancient past, the Greco-Roman ideas of nature.

**Aesthetics:** Pope argues that the principles of good writing and criticism are derived from nature itself. He suggests that nature should serve as the ultimate standard against which literary works are judged. This idea reflects the belief of the Enlightenment era in the rational order and beauty of the natural world.

**Criticism of Pope's Ideas:** Nature is not properly defined and is not widely accepted. Many critics have complained that Pope wants critics to follow Nature, without explaining what he meant by it and to 'write' as per 'nature'.

Another term is 'wit' and 'judgment' which Pope has used multiple times in the sense of virtue as powerful as Nature but left its interpretation to the fancy of critics.

But the following lines provide a hint about the rules of Nature:

“Those        RULES        of        old *discover'd*, not *devis'd*,  
Are *Nature* still,        but *Nature*        *Methodiz'd*;  
*Nature*, like *Liberty*,        is        but        restrain'd  
By the same Laws which first *herself* ordain'd.”

Pope outlines several qualities that make writing exemplary, which include clarity, where the meaning is easily understood; consistency, where the style and tone remain uniform throughout the work; and simplicity, where complex ideas are presented in a straightforward manner. He warns against excessive ornamentation, verbosity, and the use of unfamiliar or artificial language.

Pope acknowledges the value of imitation, particularly in the study and emulation of classical Greek and Roman poets. He believes that imitating the works of the great poets of the past can help writers develop their own skills and techniques. However, he also stresses the importance of originality, encouraging writers to bring their unique perspectives and voice to their work. Pitching for unity and coherence, Pope argues that a work should have a clear and central theme that is consistently developed throughout. He discourages unnecessary digressions or extraneous elements that may disrupt the overall coherence of the work. According to him, need for harmony and balance in both criticism and writing. He suggests that just as a harmonious composition pleases the ear, a harmonious literary work pleases the mind. This harmony can be achieved through the proper arrangement and blending of the various elements of a work, including the theme, structure, imagery, and language.

Pope acknowledges that while critics play an important role in guiding writers, there are limits to what criticism can achieve. He recognises that personal taste and individual preferences will always influence judgments about art. He encourages writers to develop their own judgment and not be overly swayed by the opinions of others.

### ❖ Check Your Progress

1. What is Pope's idea of Nature?
2. Why did Pope advice 'to follow Nature'?
3. What is the main focus of Alexander Pope's *An Essay on Criticism*?

4. What are the key principles and guidelines for aspiring critics and writers outlined in *An Essay on Criticism* by Alexander Pope?
5. How does Pope emphasize the importance of humility and self-improvement for critics in his essay?
6. What does Pope suggest about the role of objective standards versus personal tastes in literary criticism?
7. How does Pope address the concept of harmony and balance in language in relation to literary criticism?
8. What advice does Pope offer for evaluating a work of literature based on the intentions of the author?
9. In the second part of the essay, how does Pope explore different forms and genres of poetry?
10. What does Pope recommend regarding consistency, unity, and coherence in poetic composition?
11. According to Pope, what should a poet's style reflect, and what emotional response should it evoke in the reader?

---

## 8.6 MEMORABLE QUOTES FROM THE ESSAY

---

Alexander Pope's *An Essay on Criticism* is rich with memorable and insightful quotes that encapsulate his views on literary criticism and the art of writing and are quoted widely throughout the world till date. Here are a few quotes from the essay:

"A little learning is a dangerous thing;

Drink deep, or taste not the Pierian spring." (Lines 215-216)

This quote warns against shallow knowledge and emphasizes the importance of deep, comprehensive understanding in the pursuit of literary criticism and writing.

"To err is human, to forgive divine." (Line 525)

This famous line highlights the fallibility of human judgment and suggests that critics should exercise forgiveness and understanding when evaluating literary works.

"True wit is nature to advantage dressed,

What oft was thought, but ne'er so well expressed." (Lines 297-298)

This quote defines true wit as the ability to express thoughts that were commonly pondered but never articulated with such skill and eloquence before.

"Fools rush in where angels fear to tread." (Line 625)

This well-known line cautions against impulsive and uninformed criticism. It suggests that inexperienced critics may make hasty judgments without proper understanding or insight.

"For fools rush in where angels fear to tread,

Distrustful sense with modest caution speaks,

It still looks home, and short excursions makes;

But rattling nonsense in full volleys breaks." (Lines 625-628)

These lines highlight the importance of cautious and thoughtful criticism, contrasting it with the reckless and nonsensical remarks made by unqualified critics.

"Words are like leaves; and where they most abound,

Much fruit of sense beneath is rarely found." (Lines 309-310)

Excessive and meaningless language can often overshadow the true substance and meaning of a literary work, is emphasized.

"A perfect judge will read each work of wit

With the same spirit that its author writ." (Lines 253-254)

The suggestion is that a competent critic should approach each literary work with the same mindset and understanding as the author intended.

"For works may have more wit than does 'em good,

As bodies perish through excess of blood." (Lines 609-610)

These lines caution against the overuse or misuse of wit, as an excess of cleverness can detract from the overall quality and effectiveness of a work.

"Be silent always when you doubt your sense." (Line 625)

Here is some advice to critics to refrain from expressing their opinions when they are uncertain or doubtful about their judgment.

"To wit, to genius, never doubt their power;

Nor think the critics judge it by the hour." (Lines 589-590)

These lines remind readers not to underestimate the inherent power and brilliance of true wit and genius, and to recognize that critics should not be the sole arbiters of artistic merit.

These quotes from Pope's *An Essay on Criticism* encapsulate his wit, wisdom, and enduring insights into the world of literary criticism. They continue to be referenced and appreciated for their relevance and timeless wisdom in the study of literature.

---

## **8.7 RELEVANCE OF AN ESSAY ON CRITICISM IN CONTEMPORARY TIMES**

---

Pope's *An Essay on Criticism* had a profound influence on the literary landscape of the 18th century and beyond. Its clear and concise rules of criticism and writing became the foundation for subsequent literary theories. Pope's emphasis on the importance of clarity, unity, and adherence to nature's principles resonated with writers and

In an era of information overload and easy accessibility to online platforms for expressing opinions, Pope's emphasis on discernment and deep understanding is crucial. The essay encourages readers to engage in thoughtful analysis, rather than hastily forming judgments based on superficial knowledge or personal biases. Further, the essay highlights the significance of constructive criticism in the development of literary works. In contemporary times, where online reviews and social media platforms can shape public opinion, the essay reminds us of the responsibility to offer insightful and constructive feedback, helping writers and artists improve their craft.

Pope's discussion of the tension between imitation and originality remains relevant today. As writers navigate the literary landscape, they must strike a balance between drawing inspiration from established works and developing their own unique voices. Pope's essay encourages writers to respect tradition while pursuing innovation. The essay also emphasizes the importance of unity and coherence in literary works. In an era of fragmented attention and diverse artistic expressions, Pope's call for maintaining a clear central theme and consistent style serves as a reminder of the power of a well-crafted and cohesive artistic vision.

Pope's caution against shallow criticism resonates in contemporary times where quick judgments and uninformed opinions abound. The essay prompts readers to engage in thoughtful analysis, avoid rushing to judgment, and seek a deeper understanding before forming opinions about literary works. The assertion that the principles of good writing are derived from nature has enduring relevance. In an age of technological advancements and artificial intelligence, the essay reminds us of the importance of grounding our creative endeavours in an appreciation for the natural world and its timeless beauty.

The interplay between creativity and adherence to rules speaks to contemporary debates about artistic freedom and the boundaries of artistic expression. The essay encourages writers to embrace creative exploration while recognising the value of established literary conventions. It also challenges critics to adopt a responsible and fair approach to evaluating works of art. In a digital age where everyone can voice their opinions, Pope's call for critics to be knowledgeable, balanced, and constructive serves as a reminder of the ethical responsibilities associated with offering critical assessments.

The initial response to *An Essay on Criticism* was somewhat mixed. Some critics admired Pope's skillful use of the heroic couplet and his insights into the principles of criticism. They praised his ability to distill complex ideas into concise and memorable lines. However, others criticized Pope for his adherence to classical models and his conservative approach to literary traditions. Pope's technical mastery and the polished nature of his verse was acknowledged, with high appreciation for his command of rhyme and meter, noting the smooth and musical quality of his poetry. Pope's skill in employing wit, wordplay, and rhetorical devices was also admired.

*An Essay on Criticism* went beyond mere literary criticism and delved into broader moral and philosophical themes. Pope's exploration of the role of critics, his emphasis on balance and harmony, and his advocacy for reason and moderation in both art and life, were hugely commended. However, detractors accused him of being too conservative and rigid in his adherence to established rules and traditions. They argued that his views stifled creativity

and innovation in literature. Some critics found fault with his treatment of women and questioned the limited roles he assigned to them.

With a profound impact on the literary landscape, the essay has become a widely studied and influential work in the field of literary criticism. It remains relevant in contemporary times as a guide to thoughtful criticism, the pursuit of artistic excellence, and the timeless principles of good writing. Its insights into discernment, constructive feedback, tradition, originality, unity, and coherence, and the responsibilities of critics continue to resonate in the world of literature and beyond. Pope's ideas on the principles of criticism, the role of the poet, and the relationship between reason and art had a lasting effect on subsequent generations of writers and critics.

❖ **Check Your Progress**

1. After reading *An Essay on Criticism*, identify more such witty quotes as shared above and write about their contemporary relevance.

❖ **Check Your Progress- Objective Type Questions**

**1. In which year was *An Essay on Criticism* published?**

- a) 1690
- b) 1711
- c) 1751
- d) 1776

**2. *An Essay on Criticism* is primarily concerned with:**

- a) Literary theory and criticism
- b) Political philosophy
- c) Scientific discoveries
- d) Religious doctrines

**3. The famous quote "A little learning is a dangerous thing" is from which poem?**

- a) "An Essay on Criticism"
- b) "The Rape of the Lock"
- c) "Eloisa to Abelard"
- d) "The Dunciad"

**4. What does Pope refer to as "false eloquence" in his essay?**

- a) Misleading political speeches
- b) Ornate and flowery language without substance
- c) The use of logical fallacies
- d) Poorly written poetry

**5. According to Pope, who is the ideal critic?**

- a) An educated and experienced individual
- b) A person with personal biases and preferences

- c) An influential political figure
- d) A religious leader

**6. What is the significance of "Nature" in *An Essay on Criticism*?**

- a) Nature represents the divine order and harmony.
- b) Nature symbolizes human emotions and desires.
- c) Nature refers to the physical environment.
- d) Nature is irrelevant to the themes of the essay.

**7. Which poetic form is predominantly used in *An Essay on Criticism*?**

- a) Sonnet
- b) Epic
- c) Villanelle
- d) Heroic couplet

**8. According to Pope, what role does wit play in poetic criticism?**

- a) Wit is the foundation of all good criticism.
- b) Wit should be avoided in critical analysis.
- c) Wit is irrelevant to the process of criticism.
- d) Wit should be used sparingly in moderation.

**9. What is the main message conveyed by Pope in *An Essay on Criticism*?**

- a) The importance of following traditional literary conventions
- b) The need for individuality and artistic freedom
- c) The dangers of relying on superficial judgment
- d) The superiority of poetry over other art forms

**Answers: 1-b, 2-a, 3-a, 4-b, 5-a, 6-a, 7-d, 8-a, 9-a**

---

## **8.9 LET US SUM UP**

---

In this Unit, you have learned that:

1. The principles of literary criticism and the art of writing.
2. The importance of nature as a standard, the qualities of good writing, the balance between imitation and originality, and
3. The problems in the Pope's contemporary times to the solutions offered by Pope, *An Essay on Criticism* and its relevance even in the 21<sup>st</sup> century.

---

## **8.10 KEYWORDS**

---

<b>Dulness</b>	Lack of intelligence or creativity; stupidity.
<b>Censure</b>	Strong criticism or disapproval.

<b>Ignorance</b>	Lack of knowledge or awareness.
<b>Taste</b>	Judgment or discernment in matters of beauty or aesthetics.
<b>Wit</b>	Cleverness or intellectual humour.
<b>Illusion</b>	Deceptive or misleading appearance.
<b>Pedant</b>	A person who excessively focuses on minor details or rules, especially in a narrow or formal manner.
<b>Presumptuous</b>	Overconfident or arrogant, especially without justification.
<b>Blunt</b>	Direct or straightforward, often lacking tact or sensitivity.
<b>Prejudice</b>	Preconceived opinion or bias, often unfavourable, formed without sufficient knowledge or experience.
<b>Envy</b>	A feeling of discontent or resentment towards someone else's possessions, qualities, or achievements.
<b>Flattery</b>	Excessive or insincere praise, often with the intent to gain favour or manipulate.
<b>Judicious</b>	Showing good judgment or sense.
<b>Impartial</b>	Fair and unbiased, without favouritism.
<b>Paradox</b>	A seemingly contradictory statement or situation that reveals an underlying truth.
<b>Trivial</b>	Of little importance or significance; insignificant.
<b>Satire</b>	A literary technique that uses humor, irony, or ridicule to criticize or expose human vices, follies, or shortcomings.
<b>Poignant</b>	Evoking a keen sense of sadness, regret, or sympathy.
<b>Discord</b>	Lack of harmony or agreement; conflict or disagreement.
<b>Eloquent</b>	Fluent and persuasive in speaking or writing; expressive.

---

## 8.11 SUGGESTED READINGS

---

### Primary Reading

1. Pope, A. (1711). *An Essay on Criticism*. In P. Baines, M., Bullard & J. Christopher (Ed.), *The Works of Alexander Pope*. OUP.

### Secondary Reading

2. Kroll, R. W. (1985). Pope and the Traditions of Ancient Criticism. In *The Dissenting Voice: The New Essay of Enlightenment* (pp. 47-66). Penn State University Press.
3. Noggle, J. (1998). Pope's "An Essay on Criticism" and the Poetics of Authority.

In *Canon and Creativity: Modern Writing and the Authority of Scripture* (pp. 59-73). University of Pennsylvania Press.

**:: STRUCTURE ::****9.0 Objectives****9.1 Introduction****9.3 A Summary of Dr. Samuel Johnson's "Preface to Shakespeare"****9.4 Critical Appreciation of Dr. Samuel Johnson's "Preface to Shakespeare"****9.5 Let Us Sum Up****9.6 Key Words****❖ Check Your Progress****9.7 Suggested Reading****❖ Answers**

---

**9.0 OBJECTIVES**

---

In this Unit, we shall:

- Explore Dr. Samuel Johnson's contribution to literary criticism and his role as a transitional figure between neoclassicism and romanticism.
- Examine Johnson's analysis of Shakespeare's genius and his belief that Shakespeare's excellence transcends conventional rules and norms.
- Recognize Johnson's appreciation for Shakespeare's characterization, particularly his ability to create characters with consistent traits that evolve naturally.
- Analyze Johnson's critique of neoclassical ideals regarding fixed character types and his endorsement of Shakespeare's more lifelike and dynamic characters.

On completing this Unit, you should be able to:

- analyze Dr. Samuel Johnson's role as a significant figure in the transition between neoclassicism and romanticism in literary thought.
- evaluate Johnson's arguments regarding Shakespeare's genius and his assertion that Shakespeare's excellence surpasses conventional literary norms.
- assess Johnson's appreciation for Shakespeare's characterization techniques, including his creation of characters with evolving traits that deviate from rigid neoclassical character types.



- analyze Johnson's viewpoint on Shakespeare's portrayal of human nature's intricacies, contradictions, and imperfections, challenging the idealized norms of neoclassical literature.

---

## 9.1 INTRODUCTION

---

Samuel Johnson (1709-1784) was a renowned English writer, critic, poet, and lexicographer. He is often referred to as "Dr. Johnson" due to his honorary doctorate. Johnson's life and works left a significant impact on English literature, criticism, and the development of the English language.

Samuel Johnson was born on September 18, 1709, in Lichfield, Staffordshire, England, to Sarah Ford and Michael Johnson, a bookseller. He suffered from childhood illnesses that left him with hearing loss and other health issues. Johnson's father's financial difficulties hindered his education, but he showed exceptional intellectual abilities and an early interest in reading. Johnson attended Pembroke College, Oxford, but financial constraints forced him to leave without a degree. He briefly worked as a teacher and then as an usher at a school before moving to London to pursue a literary career. His major works are:

**Dictionary of the English Language (1755):** One of Johnson's most significant achievements was his monumental "A Dictionary of the English Language." Published in 1755, it was a groundbreaking and comprehensive work that played a vital role in standardizing English vocabulary and spelling.

**The Rambler (1750-1752):** Johnson wrote a series of essays under the pseudonym "The Rambler." These essays covered a wide range of topics, including morality, literature, society, and human nature.

**A Journey to the Western Islands of Scotland (1775):** Johnson's travel narrative documents his journey through Scotland with his friend James Boswell. The work provides insights into Scottish culture and society.

**The Lives of the Most Eminent English Poets (1779-1781):** In this series of biographical and critical essays, Johnson provides accounts of the lives and works of numerous English poets, contributing to the understanding of English literary history.

Johnson's literary criticism, particularly his "Preface to Shakespeare," had a profound influence on how Shakespeare's works were perceived and studied. He was a central figure in the literary and intellectual circles of his time, including his association with the Literary Club, which included notable members like Joshua Reynolds, Edmund Burke, and James Boswell. Johnson's works, including his essays, poetry, and literary criticism, contributed to the development of English prose and the formation of English literary standards.

Johnson's later years were marked by financial struggles, personal losses, and declining health. He continued writing, working on his biographies of poets and other projects. Samuel Johnson passed away on December 13, 1784, in London, at the age of 75.

---

## 9.2 HISTORICAL CONTEXT BEHIND THE WRITING OF DR. SAMUEL JOHNSON'S "A PREFACE TO SHAKESPEARE."

---

The historical context behind the writing of Dr. Samuel Johnson's "A Preface to Shakespeare" is crucial to understanding the motivations and influences that shaped Johnson's perspective on Shakespeare's works and literary criticism. The 18th century was a time of significant shifts in cultural, artistic, and intellectual paradigms, which directly influenced Johnson's approach to analyzing Shakespeare's plays.

**Neoclassical Period:** The 18th century marked the peak of the neoclassical period in literature and art. Neoclassicism emphasized the imitation of classical models from ancient Greece and Rome, focusing on reason, order, and adherence to rules. Literary works were expected to adhere to specific forms, themes, and genres, guided by established norms and conventions.

**Restoration and Enlightenment:** The Restoration period (1660-1700) had witnessed a revival of theater and literature after a period of Puritan influence. This led to a flourishing of drama and the development of neoclassical ideals in English literature. The Enlightenment, an intellectual movement emphasizing reason, rationality, and the pursuit of knowledge, also influenced literary thought during this time.

**The Rise of Criticism:** The 18th century saw a rise in the importance of literary criticism as a distinct field of study. Scholars, writers, and thinkers began to analyze and evaluate works of literature with more rigor and systematic approaches, contributing to the development of literary theory.

**Emergence of Romanticism:** While neoclassical ideals still held sway, the seeds of Romanticism were being sown during this period. Romanticism emphasized individual expression, emotional depth, and a connection with nature and the human experience. This shift was in part a reaction against the rigid conventions of neoclassicism.

**Johnson's Role and Influence:** Samuel Johnson was a prominent literary figure of his time, known for his influential dictionary and essays. He was a transitional figure between neoclassical and romantic thought. While he respected established literary norms, he was also willing to question and challenge them. Johnson's own writings often reflected a more complex and humanistic perspective on literature and life.

**Writing the Preface:** When Johnson wrote the preface to his edition of Shakespeare's plays in 1765, he was addressing both the prevailing neoclassical literary norms and the emerging romantic sentiments. His preface reflects his belief that Shakespeare's genius exceeded the confines of these norms. Johnson's balanced critique and appreciation of Shakespeare's works showcase his willingness to acknowledge Shakespeare's deviations from neoclassical rules while still acknowledging his profound impact on English literature.

---

### **9.3 A SUMMARY OF DR. SAMUEL JOHNSON'S "PREFACE TO SHAKESPEARE"**

---

Dr. Samuel Johnson wrote a special piece about Shakespeare's plays in 1765. In it, he talks about how amazing Shakespeare was as a writer. Johnson thinks that Shakespeare's brilliance goes beyond any normal rules or ways of writing. He really likes how Shakespeare made characters that stayed true to themselves but also changed in a natural way. This is different from what people usually thought characters should be like during that time.

Johnson likes how Shakespeare showed people in stories with all their complicated feelings and contradictions. He also likes how Shakespeare could mix serious sad parts with funny light parts in his plays. Johnson is impressed by how Shakespeare used words to express deep thoughts and emotions in a beautiful and dramatic way.

Even though Shakespeare sometimes showed things that people didn't really like at the time, Johnson defends him. He says that art should show all the different sides of human behaviour, even if they're not always good. Johnson believes that Shakespeare's ideas and characters are timeless, meaning they still make sense and are interesting for people from different cultures and times.

Johnson does admit that Shakespeare had some small problems in his writing, like when characters didn't always act the same way or when the story didn't make perfect sense. But Johnson thinks these issues aren't very important when compared to all the great things Shakespeare brought to literature. Something important Johnson does is challenge the old-fashioned rules of writing, like the "Three Unities." These rules said that stories should happen in one place, in a short amount of time, and with one main plot. Johnson disagrees and says Shakespeare's greatness comes from ignoring these rules and going with what felt right for his stories.

---

### **9.4 A CRITICAL APPRECIATION OF DR. SAMUEL JOHNSON'S "PREFACE TO SHAKESPEARE"**

---

Dr. Samuel Johnson's "Preface to Shakespeare" is a significant piece of literary criticism that provides insight into both Johnson's views on William Shakespeare's works and his broader thoughts on literature and art. Published in 1765 as part of his edition of Shakespeare's plays, the preface offers a comprehensive examination of Shakespeare's strengths and weaknesses, and it also reflects Johnson's own principles of literary criticism. One of the remarkable aspects of Johnson's preface is his balanced approach. He doesn't hesitate to critique Shakespeare's weaknesses, yet he places them in the context of the playwright's unmatched creativity and originality. This balance reflects Johnson's nuanced understanding of artistic merit.

**Opening Acknowledgment of Shakespeare's Genius:** Johnson's preface opens with a profound acknowledgment of Shakespeare's exceptional genius. He suggests that Shakespeare's excellence surpasses the conventional rules and norms that typically govern literary works. This opening immediately sets the tone for Johnson's argument, establishing his belief that Shakespeare's artistry stands above and beyond mere adherence to established norms.

**Praise for Shakespeare's Characterization:** In the subsequent sections, Johnson praises Shakespeare's mastery in crafting characters that possess consistent traits yet evolve naturally throughout the course of his plays. Johnson commends Shakespeare's approach for diverging from the neoclassical ideals of rigid character types, emphasizing his appreciation for the lifelike development of characters that aligns with human nature's unpredictability.

**Appreciation for Portrayal of Human Nature:** Johnson's admiration for Shakespeare's portrayal of human nature's intricacies, contradictions, and imperfections underscores his departure from the neoclassical emphasis on idealized characters and situations. Johnson appreciates Shakespeare's willingness to depict the genuine complexities of human behaviour, which aligns with Johnson's broader view of art as a reflection of life's multifaceted nature.

**Applause for Originality and Diversity:** Johnson highlights Shakespeare's exceptional range and originality as a playwright. He praises Shakespeare's ability to blend elements of high tragedy and low comedy within his works, a testament to his versatile storytelling capabilities. Johnson lauds Shakespeare's capacity to capture the diverse spectrum of human emotions and experiences, breaking away from the constrained genre divisions of neoclassicism.

**Acclaim for Shakespeare's Command of Language:** The preface also focuses on Shakespeare's remarkable command of language. Johnson praises how Shakespeare employs language to convey profound ideas and intense emotions, often using poetic and dramatic means. Johnson recognizes the power of language as a tool for Shakespeare to articulate the depth of human experience and reflect the grandeur of his themes.

**Defense of Moral Complexity and Universality:** While acknowledging Shakespeare's occasional departure from the moral standards of his time, Johnson defends these instances as crucial for the portrayal of the intricate nuances of human behaviour. He argues that art should not be limited to portraying only the virtuous aspects of humanity. Additionally, Johnson underscores the universal appeal of Shakespeare's themes and characters, highlighting their ability to transcend cultural and temporal boundaries.

**Addressing Shortcomings and Flaws:** Johnson candidly acknowledges Shakespeare's minor flaws, such as inconsistencies in characterization and plot, suggesting that they exist in his work. However, he contends that these shortcomings are overshadowed by Shakespeare's broader contributions to literature. This nuanced approach demonstrates Johnson's balanced evaluation of Shakespeare's achievements and areas for improvement.

**Challenge to Neoclassical Conventions:** One of the critical aspects of Johnson's preface is his challenge to neoclassical conventions, particularly the "Three Unities." He asserts that Shakespeare's greatness lies in his ability to surpass these rigid rules and instead follow his own artistic instincts and the demands of his stories. Johnson's critique of neoclassical norms showcases his willingness to embrace unconventional approaches to storytelling and creativity.

**Conclusion and Affirmation of Shakespeare's Legacy:** The preface concludes with an affirmation of Shakespeare's enduring legacy. Johnson's

eloquent discussion underscores his deep respect for Shakespeare's contributions to literature and his appreciation for the playwright's extraordinary ability to capture the essence of human experience. By analysing Shakespeare's works through a multidimensional lens, Johnson's preface showcases his status as a transitional critic who bridges neoclassical thought with a more inclusive and emotionally resonant appreciation of art.

---

## 9.5 LET US SUM UP

---

Dr. Samuel Johnson's writing about Shakespeare tells us how amazing Shakespeare was, even though he didn't always follow the normal writing rules. Johnson likes how Shakespeare made characters realistic and how he mixed serious and funny parts in his plays. He also says that even though Shakespeare's stories sometimes showed not-so-good things, it's okay because art should show all sides of life. Johnson thinks that Shakespeare's stories are still interesting for people everywhere, even if they're from different times or places. And even though Shakespeare had some small problems in his writing, Johnson thinks those don't matter much compared to all the great things Shakespeare did.

---

## 9.6 KEY WORDS

---

- **Genius:** In this context, "genius" refers to exceptional intellectual and creative ability, particularly in the realm of literary or artistic endeavours.
- **Neoclassical:** Neoclassical refers to the revival of classical aesthetics and principles in art and literature, particularly those of ancient Greece and Rome. Neoclassical works often emphasized order, reason, and adherence to established rules.
- **Characterization:** The process of creating and developing fictional characters within a literary work, encompassing their traits, behaviours, and personalities.
- **Intricacies:** Complex details or aspects that are interconnected and often difficult to fully understand or unravel.
- **Originality:** The quality of being new, unique, or innovative in terms of ideas, concepts, or artistic expression.
- **Universal Resonance:** The idea that certain themes, ideas, or characters are relatable and meaningful across different cultures, time periods, and contexts.
- **Moral Deviations:** Departures from commonly accepted moral standards or norms within a literary work. It can refer to actions, behaviours, or themes that challenge conventional ethical expectations.
- **Conventions:** Established rules, practices, or norms that guide the creation and interpretation of literary works. Conventions can encompass elements like structure, genre, and style.
- **Three Unities:** Refers to the neoclassical dramatic principles of unity of time, unity of place, and unity of action. These principles dictated that a play should take place within a single day, in a single location, and follow a single main plotline.

- **Transcend:** To go beyond or surpass particular boundaries, limits, or norms. In this context, it refers to Shakespeare's ability to surpass the constraints of neoclassical conventions and norms.

### ❖ Check Your Progress

#### I. Fill in the Blank:

1. Johnson praises Shakespeare's ability to create characters with consistent traits that \_\_\_\_\_ throughout the course of his plays.
2. In his preface, Johnson challenges the neoclassical concept of the "Three Unities," which dictate that a play should take place within a single day, in a single location, and follow a single main plotline. Johnson argues that Shakespeare's greatness lies in his ability to \_\_\_\_\_ these rules.
3. Johnson defends Shakespeare's occasional \_\_\_\_\_ deviations, arguing that art should reflect the intricate and sometimes contradictory aspects of human behaviour.
4. Johnson acknowledges that Shakespeare's characters are not bound by unvarying traits, but instead \_\_\_\_\_ naturally in response to changing circumstances.
5. One of Johnson's key points is Shakespeare's exceptional range and \_\_\_\_\_, which allows him to seamlessly blend elements of high tragedy and low comedy within his works.

#### II. Multiple Choice Questions:

##### 1. What is one of the main points Samuel Johnson makes about Shakespeare's

characters?

- A. They remain static throughout the plays.
- B. They always adhere to neoclassical ideals.
- C. They naturally change and evolve.
- D. They only display positive traits.

##### 2. Johnson praises Shakespeare's ability to blend elements of:

- A. Mythology and folklore.
- B. Tragedy and comedy.
- C. Fantasy and science fiction.
- D. Romanticism and realism.

##### 3. Johnson defends Shakespeare's occasional moral deviations as:

- A. Unacceptable and offensive.
- B. Reflective of neoclassical ideals.

- C. Demonstrations of his adherence to conventions.
- D. Portrayals of the complexities of human behaviour.

**4. What does Johnson challenge in his discussion of the "Three Unities"?**

- A. Shakespeare's ability to create relatable characters.
- B. Shakespeare's adherence to classical themes.
- C. The idea that Shakespeare's characters are too complex.
- D. The notion that Shakespeare's greatness lies in transcending these rules.

**5. Johnson's preface showcases his transition between:**

- A. Romanticism and realism.
- B. Neoclassicism and realism.
- C. Neoclassicism and romanticism.
- D. Romanticism and naturalism.

**III. Short Answer Questions:**

- Q.1.** What is Johnson's opinion about Shakespeare's genius?
- Q.2.** How does Johnson describe the characters in Shakespeare's plays?
- Q.3.** Why does Johnson appreciate Shakespeare's portrayal of human nature?
- Q.4.** What does Johnson defend regarding Shakespeare's moral choices?
- Q.5.** What neoclassical principle does Johnson challenge in his preface?

**IV. Long Answer Questions:**

- Q1.** What are some reasons Samuel Johnson praises Shakespeare's works in his preface?
- Q2.** How does Samuel Johnson challenge neoclassical norms in his preface to Shakespeare's plays?

---

**9.7 SUGGESTED READINGS**

---

- **"Shakespearean Tragedy: Lectures on Hamlet, Othello, King Lear, Macbeth"** by A.C. Bradley, Palgrave Macmillan.
- **"Samuel Johnson's Critical Opinions"** edited by Arthur Sherbo, University of Toronto Press.
- **"Shakespeare and the English Romantic Imagination"** by Jonathan Bate, Oxford University Press
- **"The Cambridge Companion to Shakespeare"** edited by Margreta de Grazia and Stanley Wells, Cambridge University Press.

- **"The Age of Johnson: A Literary History"** edited by Robert DeMaria Jr., Cambridge University Press

## ❖ **Answers**

### **I. Fill in the Blank:**

1. evolve naturally 2. transcend 3. moral 4. evolve 5. originality

### **II. Multiple Choice Questions:**

1. (c) They naturally change and evolve. 2. (b) Tragedy and comedy. 3. (d) Portrayals of the complexities of human behaviour. 4. (d) The notion that Shakespeare's greatness lies in transcending these rules 5. (c) Neoclassicism and romanticism.

### **III. Short Answer Questions:**

1. Johnson believes Shakespeare's genius goes beyond ordinary rules and norms.
2. Johnson describes Shakespeare's characters as consistent but naturally evolving.
3. Johnson appreciates how Shakespeare shows the complexities of human nature, including contradictions and imperfections.
4. Johnson defends Shakespeare's occasional moral deviations, stating that art should reflect the complexities of human behaviour.
5. Johnson challenges the neoclassical principle of the "Three Unities," which dictate strict rules for the time, place, and action of a play.

### **IV. Long Answer Questions:**

1. In his preface, Samuel Johnson praises Shakespeare's works for their portrayal of characters that evolve naturally, departing from the neoclassical tradition of fixed character types. He commends Shakespeare's ability to capture the complexities of human nature, presenting characters with contradictions and imperfections. Johnson also lauds Shakespeare's originality, noting his masterful blend of tragedy and comedy, which showcases a wide spectrum of human emotions. Additionally, Johnson appreciates Shakespeare's command over language, as he uses it to express profound ideas and emotions in both poetic and dramatic ways. He also defends Shakespeare's occasional moral deviations, asserting that art should depict the intricate aspects of human behaviour, even when they deviate from conventional norms.

2. In his preface, Samuel Johnson challenges neoclassical norms by discussing Shakespeare's departure from the "Three Unities," which dictated strict adherence to time, place, and action in a play. Johnson argues that Shakespeare's greatness lies in his ability to transcend these rules and follow his artistic instincts. By doing so, Shakespeare creates more realistic characters and diverse settings that better reflect the complexity of human experience. Johnson's challenge to these neoclassical conventions signals a shift towards a more inclusive and emotionally resonant approach to literary criticism, which would later be associated with the emerging romantic movement.



**:: STRUCTURE ::**

- 10.1 Objectives**
- 10.2 Introduction**
- 10.3 Biography of Wordsworth**
- 10.4 *Lyrical Ballads***
- 10.5 Definition of Lyrical Ballad**
- 10.6 Significance of *Preface to Lyrical Ballads***
- 10.7 Wordsworth's Poetic Theory**
- 10.8 Emphasis on Emotion and Imagination**
- 10.9 Importance of Nature**
- 10.10 Relation between Poetry and Everyday Life**
- 10.11 Criticism of Poetic Language**
- 10.12 The Role of the Poet**
- 10.13 Wordsworth's Idea of the Poet as a "Man Speaking to Men"**
- 10.14 Importance of Individual Experience in Poetry**
- 10.15 Criticism of Artificial Poetic Language**
- 10.16 Reception and Legacy**
- 10.17 Influence on the Romantic Movement**
- 10.18 Relevance of Wordsworth's Ideas**
- 10.19 Conclusion**
- 10.20 Keywrod**
  - ❖ **Check Your Progress**
  - ❖ **Try Yourself**
  - ❖ **Works Cited**

---

## 10.1 LEARNING

---

- Understand the importance of everyday language in poetry.
- Explore the role of imagination in poetry.
- Understand the power of poetry to shape society.
- Gain a deeper appreciation for Wordsworth's contributions to English literature.

---

## 10.2 INTRODUCTION

---

William Wordsworth's *Preface to Lyrical Ballads* is a significant piece of literature, providing an insightful introduction to his lyrical poetry. Written in 1802, the preface serves as Wordsworth's statement of poetic intent and a manifesto of sorts for the Romantic movement. In his preface, Wordsworth makes several ground-breaking claims about the nature of poetry, emphasising the importance of simplicity, emotion, and the natural world. He posits that the language used in poetry should be natural and understandable, rejecting the complicated and flowery language of the eighteenth century. Instead, he advocates a focus on the common language of everyday people, making poetry accessible to all.

He believes that the primary function of poetry is to evoke emotion, particularly that which is connected with nature. For Wordsworth, poetry is not merely a means of expressing emotion but also a way of achieving a deep connection with the natural world. Through his preface, Wordsworth introduces the concept of the poet as a seer or visionary, someone able to see and interpret the world in an exceptional way. This idea, revolutionary at the time, became a defining feature of the Romantic movement. Wordsworth's preface is a powerful and influential text, setting the tone for his poetry and transforming the way people thought about literature.

---

## 10.3 BIOGRAPHY OF WORDSWORTH

---

William Wordsworth was a British Romantic poet, born on 7 April 1770 in Cockermouth, Cumbria. His parents died when he was young, and he was sent to live with relatives. Wordsworth received his education at St John's College, Cambridge, where he studied literature and developed a deep interest in poetry. Later, he travelled to France, where he was deeply moved by the French Revolution's ideals of freedom and equality. This experience had a profound influence on his poetry, as he began to see the world as a place of interconnectedness and unification.

Wordsworth's poetry is characterised by its emphasis on nature, simplicity, and the unspoilt beauty of the countryside. He believed that poetry should reflect the simplicity and beauty of everyday life, as seen in works such as *Lines Composed a Few Miles above Tintern Abbey*, which celebrates the beauty of nature and its role in grounding and inspiring humanity. He also believed that poetry should be accessible to everyone, regardless of their social status or education, leading him to use common, everyday language in his works. Wordsworth's work helped to redefine the role of poetry in society,

and his contributions to the Romantic movement continue to influence poets and scholars today.

---

## 10.4 LYRICAL BALLADS

---

*Lyrical Ballads* is a collection of poems written by William Wordsworth and Samuel Taylor Coleridge, published in 1798. The poetry in the collection aims to represent the beauty and emotion found in everyday life, rather than the usual themes of heroism and grandeur. *Lyrical Ballads* was a revolutionary work in its time, marking a departure from the conventional poetic forms popular at the time.

In the preface to the third edition of *Lyrical Ballads*, published in 1802, Wordsworth proposes a new definition of poetry, stating that it should be accessible to everyone and explore the emotions and thoughts of ordinary people. He argues that poetry should focus on the inner workings of the human mind, rather than only the external world. Wordsworth believes that the poet's role is to be a teacher and philosopher, using poetry to impart wisdom and insight to readers. His ideas helped shape the Romantic movement that followed, as his emphasis on the ordinary and the subjective, alongside his belief in the importance of nature, became central themes in Romantic poetry.

---

## 10.5 DEFINITION OF LYRICAL BALLAD

---

The term “lyrical ballad” is an important concept in Wordsworth's *Preface to Lyrical Ballads*. Wordsworth defines the lyrical ballad as a poetic form that combines elements of two distinct genres—the ballad and the lyric. According to him, the ballad is a narrative poem that tells a story in a simple and straightforward manner, typically dealing with themes of love, tragedy, and heroic deeds. The lyric, on the other hand, is a short poem that expresses personal feelings and emotions in a highly subjective and intense way. The lyrical ballad, therefore, combines the narrative and emotional elements of both genres.

Wordsworth believes that the lyrical ballad is the most suitable form of poetry for the modern age because it can convey profound emotions and ideas in a language that is accessible and understandable to common people. Moreover, he argues that it should be written in language closest to that spoken by common people, because such language is more natural and expressive than the conventional poetic language often filled with artificial and ornamental words. In short, Wordsworth's definition of lyrical ballad emphasises simplicity, naturalness, and emotional intensity as defining characteristics of this poetic form.

---

## 10.6 SIGNIFICANCE OF PREFACE TO LYRICAL BALLADS

---

The importance of the *Preface to Lyrical Ballads* lies in its contribution to the development of literary theory and in its definition of Romanticism. Wordsworth's preface is influential in how poetry is viewed, as he emphasises the relationship between the poet and his or her environment, the power of imagination, and the rejection of conventional literary forms. His emphasis on the ordinary and the everyday as a source of poetic material revolutionises the

way poetry is viewed, challenging the traditional notion of poetry as an elite genre.

The preface's definition of Romanticism as a rejection of Neoclassicism, and its emphasis on emotion, individuality, and nature, has impacted not only literary theory but also other fields such as art and music. It inspired many poets, including the Romantics, and influenced writers beyond poetry. The preface's stress on the poet's individual experience and connection to the natural world has contributed to the idea of the Romantic hero. Even today, the preface remains an important text, shaping how readers understand poetry and the relationship between the poet and the world.

Wordsworth's prefatory material gives insight into Romanticism's focus on individualism and authentic experience. It suggests that poetry should not be limited to traditional forms and themes, but should reflect everyday language and emotions. Wordsworth advocates poetry grounded in the "language really spoken by men" rather than in the elevated and artificial language of the literary elite. This reflects the Romantic rejection of aristocratic values in literary expression and affirms the value of the common individual. His emphasis on emotional and experiential truth reflects Romantic individualism and inner life, opposed to Enlightenment ideals of a rational, objective understanding of the world.

---

## **10.7 WORDSWORTH'S POETIC THEORY**

---

Wordsworth's poetic theory, as discussed in his *Preface to Lyrical Ballads*, forms the foundation of his literary work. He believes that poetry should express the emotions and experiences of the common person, and that the language used should be simple and accessible. Wordsworth argues that poetry should be authentic and reflective of reality, and that the poet should draw inspiration from nature and the world around them. He rejects artificial ornamentation and "highfalutin" diction, which he views as distancing and unnatural.

His emphasis on emotion and expression is evident in his poetry, which often features personal experiences and reflections on daily life. Moreover, his view of poetry as a means of communication between writer and reader is reflected in his concept of poetic diction as the language that best conveys emotions and ideas. Ultimately, Wordsworth's theory argues for the capacity of poetry to connect people and deepen their understanding of human experience.

---

## **10.8 EMPHASIS ON EMOTION AND IMAGINATION**

---

Wordsworth places great emphasis on emotion and imagination in poetry. He argues that poetry should not focus on "abstract" ideas or "general" truths, but rather on individual perception and sentiment. Wordsworth condemns the artificial language and "poetic diction" fashionable among his contemporaries, which he regards as divorced from the language of everyday life. By contrast, he stresses the value of a natural, simple style that allows the language of real life to appear in poetry.

This emphasis on simplicity is connected to Wordsworth's belief that the ordinary can be a source of poetic inspiration. It also supports his rejection of poetry as an elitist art form reserved for the educated. Instead, he promotes democratic poetry based on the experience and language of ordinary people.

His insistence on emotion and imagination paved the way for later Romantic poets who sought to express the full range of the human psyche and its relation to the world.

---

## **10.9 IMPORTANCE OF NATURE**

---

Wordsworth's *Preface to Lyrical Ballads* highlights the importance of nature in shaping human experience. According to Wordsworth, nature is a source of inspiration for both poetry and people. He argues that nature's beauty and power can help individuals find renewed meaning in their lives. The natural world, in his view, is a place of healing and rejuvenation and provides refuge from the stresses of society. He suggests that people should embrace nature as a guide, rather than attempt to overpower or control it.

Wordsworth's focus on nature reflects a growing awareness of humanity's impact on the environment. He argues that the modern world has lost touch with nature, leading to spiritual emptiness. By reconnecting with nature, individuals can reclaim purpose and fulfilment. Thus, Wordsworth encourages valuing the natural world for its beauty and for its ability to enrich human life and foster harmony.

---

## **10.10 RELATION BETWEEN POETRY AND EVERYDAY LIFE**

---

Wordsworth believed that poetry should depict the real, everyday life of common people. For him, poetry represents ordinary experiences and does not exist to elevate only a select group. He believed poetry should celebrate emotions and feelings often overlooked in daily life. This approach, he argued, would make poetry more accessible and involve a wider readership in literature.

This belief remains relevant, as poetry continues to reflect essential aspects of daily life and connect individuals with their emotions. When readers engage with a poem, they relate the poet's emotions to their own experiences, creating connection and recognition. Poetry thus serves as a powerful medium to communicate experiences and emotions, capturing the essence of ordinary life in its simplicity and making it meaningful across time.

---

## **10.11 CRITICISM OF POETIC LANGUAGE**

---

One key criticism of poetic language is that it can be difficult to understand. This was often said about Wordsworth's poetry, which some critics found obscure and elusive. Critics claimed his use of archaic language, unusual sentence structures, and unconventional metaphors made it difficult for readers to comprehend his work. Some also argued that his focus on the ordinary and humble meant his poetry lacked the grandeur and sophistication associated with traditional poetry.

Despite these criticisms, Wordsworth's poetry deeply influenced English literature. His focus on the natural world, his commitment to the value of the individual, and his advocacy of a democratic approach to poetry contributed to the Romantic movement. His *Preface to Lyrical Ballads* clearly sets out his ideas on poetry's purpose: using ordinary language, reflecting common emotions, being inspired by nature, and serving a moral purpose. Although some may view his ideas as idealistic, the preface remains crucial in the

development of English Romanticism and demonstrates poetry's capacity to capture human experience.

---

## **10.12 THE ROLE OF THE POET**

---

Wordsworth assigns the poet a unique role in society. He believes the poet must engage with the deepest emotions and experiences of humanity in order to create art that speaks truthfully to readers. The poet's task is to guide readers, showing them the beauty of nature and the power of human emotions. Wordsworth suggests that the poet should not be limited by traditional rules of metre and rhyme, but should write in language easily understood.

Wordsworth also argues that the poet has a moral duty to expose and denounce social injustice and humanity's cruelty through poetic works. This is achieved through connecting the inner emotions of the writer with those of the reader. The poet must explore the depths of human feeling and express complex emotions in a simple manner without losing their essence. Thus, the poet acts as witness and as an agent of change, illuminating social wrongs and helping to bring about improvement.

---

## **10.13 WORDSWORTH'S IDEA OF THE POET AS A "MAN SPEAKING TO MEN"**

---

Wordsworth's idea of the poet as a "man speaking to men" highlights direct and clear communication between poet and audience. It rejects elevated language and distant themes, arguing instead for plain language and everyday experiences that audiences can recognise. This approach emphasises the reader and encourages democratic connection between poet and public, suggesting that poetry should be accessible to all, not only the educated elite.

Wordsworth further argues that poetry should not merely entertain but inspire meaningful living. By depicting nature's beauty and simplicity, the poet awakens moral sensibilities and deepens the reader's connection with the world. This idea thus stresses clear communication, accessibility, and social responsibility. Wordsworth believed that, by focusing on ordinary experience, poetry could inspire social change and help individuals lead fuller lives.

---

## **10.14 IMPORTANCE OF INDIVIDUAL EXPERIENCE IN POETRY**

---

Wordsworth believed that individual experience is central to poetry. He felt the poet should give voice to personal and emotional responses to the world, making poetry a powerful medium for expressing human experience. By drawing upon lived experience, poets create works grounded in reality and convey universal emotions shared by all.

Wordsworth defines poetry as the spontaneous overflow of powerful feelings arising from emotion recollected in tranquillity. He believed poetry should be a natural outpouring of emotion rather than an artificial construct. His poem *I Wandered Lonely as a Cloud (Daffodils)* illustrates this principle, as it is based on a real experience and expresses genuine joy and wonder at the sight of the daffodils. The poem uses vivid imagery to convey intense feeling, showing how memory preserves the experience and renews emotion. Wordsworth also writes that "poetry is the breath and finer spirit of all knowledge; it is the

impassioned expression which is in the countenance of all Science.” For him, poetry is a means of understanding and expressing the world, not merely entertainment.

---

### **10.15 CRITICISM OF ARTIFICIAL POETIC LANGUAGE**

---

A major criticism of artificial poetic language is that it can be overly affected and forced, leading to loss of authenticity and meaning. Wordsworth criticises “poetic diction”, which he describes as ornate and obscure language used to cover a lack of genuine poetic power. According to Wordsworth, true poetry should be written in accessible and straightforward language rather than language understood only by a select few. Many critics and poets have echoed this view, arguing that overly elaborate language distances writers from readers and weakens the work.

Critics of artificial language also argue that it restricts expression and limits genuine emotion. By depending on predetermined expressions, a poet may fail to convey the depth and complexity of experience. Wordsworth therefore argues for poetry rooted in the language of everyday individuals, which is more relatable and can be more powerful because it expresses genuinely lived emotions and ideas. He also emphasises imagination, not as mere invention, but as a means of capturing the essence of feeling and creating truthful representations of human emotion.

---

### **10.16 RECEPTION AND LEGACY**

---

The reception and legacy of Wordsworth’s *Preface to Lyrical Ballads* have been wide-ranging. At the time, the preface received mixed reviews: some praised Wordsworth’s natural language and subject matter, while others criticised his rejection of traditional poetic forms and metre. Over time, however, the preface came to be recognised as a ground-breaking manifesto for Romanticism.

Wordsworth’s emphasis on ordinary language and individual experience influenced generations of writers, including major Romantic poets such as Percy Bysshe Shelley and John Keats. The preface also helped lay foundations for later developments in poetry, including modernist approaches that sought freedom from traditional forms. It has also influenced understandings of language, nature, and human experience, reinforcing the idea that poetry should celebrate ordinary life and the natural world.

---

### **10.17 INFLUENCE ON THE ROMANTIC MOVEMENT**

---

A key feature of Wordsworth’s preface is its emphasis on emotion and imagination. Wordsworth believed poetry should be based on personal experience and feeling rather than artificial classical conventions. He famously described poetry as “the spontaneous overflow of powerful feelings”. This emphasis on subjectivity influenced Romanticism by encouraging poets to explore their own inner lives and express individual emotion.

Wordsworth’s love of nature also shaped Romantic themes, influencing poets such as Keats and Shelley, who likewise treated nature as a central subject. His ideas affected how poetry was written and received, encouraging renewed interest in lyric forms that could express personal feeling. In this way, the

preface played a major role in shaping Romantic poetry both in subject matter and artistic approach.

---

### 10.18 RELEVANCE OF WORDSWORTH'S IDEAS

---

Wordsworth's continuing relevance is evident in modern society. His emphasis on nature's spiritual importance and the value of personal experience has shaped later literary traditions and influenced contemporary attitudes towards the natural world. His advocacy of common language and rejection of over-complicated forms still inspires writers who aim for clarity and sincerity.

Wordsworth's understanding of memory and its relation to creativity also remains significant. His ideas highlight the role of reflection on past experiences in producing meaningful art. Therefore, the *Preface to Lyrical Ballads* remains an important text, offering enduring ideas about human experience, nature, and creativity that continue to be studied and valued.

---

### 10.19 CONCLUSION

---

In a nutshell, Wordsworth's *Preface to Lyrical Ballads* presented a revolutionary perspective on poetry, emphasising the importance of nature, simplicity, and emotion. By distancing himself from the conventions of his time, Wordsworth sought to bring poetry closer to daily life and make it accessible to all. His views on poetry's purpose aimed not merely to communicate a message but also to elevate readers' emotions through direct and simple language.

Wordsworth's emphasis on natural expressions of passion helped reduce distinctions between high and low literature and highlighted the importance of individual experience. This ideology laid the foundation for Romanticism in English literature and remains a significant contribution to literary criticism and poetic practice.

---

### 10.20 KEYWORD

---

1. The preface emphasises simplicity, emotion, and the natural world in poetry.
2. Wordsworth argues that poetry should use natural and understandable language to make it accessible to all.
3. He introduces the concept of the poet as a seer or visionary who interprets the world in an exceptional way.
4. *Lyrical Ballads* marked a departure from conventional poetic forms popular at that time.
5. Wordsworth defines a lyrical ballad as a form combining ballad (narrative) and lyric (personal emotion).
6. The preface's idea of Romanticism rejects Neoclassicism and emphasises emotion, individuality, and nature.
7. The preface influenced not only literary theory but also art and music.
8. It contributed to the idea of Romantic heroism by stressing individual experience and connection with nature.



9. The emphasis on nature and ordinary life challenges poetry as an elite genre.
10. Wordsworth believed poetry should be democratic, reflecting emotions often overlooked in everyday life.
11. He believed artificial language detaches the author from the audience and detracts from art itself.
12. Critics criticised his rejection of traditional poetic forms and metre, though this later shaped new poetic directions.
13. His philosophy resonates with contemporary understandings of nature, memory, and creativity.

#### ❖ Check Your Progress

##### Short Answer Questions

1. What is the main idea presented in Wordsworth's *Preface to Lyrical Ballads*?
2. What is the role of imagination in poetry, according to Wordsworth?
3. How does Wordsworth believe poetry can shape society?
4. What are some of the key themes and motifs in Wordsworth's poetry?
5. How does Wordsworth's poetry differ from traditional poetry of his time?
6. What is the significance of *Lyrical Ballads* in the history of English literature?
7. What is the historical and cultural context of Wordsworth's works?

#### ❖ Answers

1. The main idea is that poetry should use language accessible to ordinary people and focus on everyday experiences and emotions.
2. Wordsworth believes imagination should create new and original works reflecting the beauty and wonder of nature.
3. He argues that poetry can inspire and uplift people, promoting moral and social values.
4. Nature, childhood, and the inner self.
5. It focuses on everyday life and the natural world and uses accessible language.
6. It helped establish a new era of poetry focused on everyday life and nature and established Wordsworth as a major poet.
7. His works were written during major social and political change in England, including the Industrial Revolution and the rise of Romanticism.

### Multiple Choice Questions

1. What is the main idea presented in Wordsworth's *Preface to Lyrical Ballads*?
  - a) Poetry should use language inaccessible to ordinary people
  - b) Poetry should focus on abstract ideas rather than everyday life
  - c) Poetry should use language accessible to ordinary people and focus on everyday life experiences
  - d) Poetry should only be written in Latin or Greek
2. What is the role of imagination in poetry, according to Wordsworth?
  - a) Imagination has no role in poetry
  - b) Imagination should be used to create works that reflect abstract ideas
  - c) Imagination should be used to create new and original works that reflect the beauty and wonder of nature
  - d) Imagination should only be used in science fiction writing
3. How does Wordsworth believe poetry can shape society?
  - a) Poetry has no impact on society
  - b) Poetry can inspire and uplift people, and promote moral and social values
  - c) Poetry is only for entertainment purposes
  - d) Poetry should be censored by the government
4. What are some key themes and motifs in Wordsworth's poetry?
  - a) War, politics, and religion
  - b) Nature, childhood, and the inner self
  - c) Love, romance, and adventure
  - d) Sports, fashion, and technology
5. How does Wordsworth's poetry differ from traditional poetry of his time?
  - a) Traditional poetry focuses on everyday life experiences
  - b) Traditional poetry uses language accessible to ordinary people
  - c) Traditional poetry focuses on abstract ideas rather than everyday life experiences
  - d) Traditional poetry was only written by women
6. What is the significance of *Lyrical Ballads* in the history of English literature?
  - a) It helped establish a new era of poetry focusing on everyday life and nature
  - b) It had no impact on English literature
  - c) It was widely criticised by contemporary reviewers
  - d) It was written in a language that is no longer spoken

7. What is the historical and cultural context of Wordsworth's works?
  - a) They were written during major social and political change in England, including the Industrial Revolution and Romanticism
  - b) They were written during a time of peace and stability in England
  - c) They were written when literature was not valued by society
  - d) They were written when only wealthy people could read and write
8. What is the importance of the "spontaneous overflow of powerful feelings" in Wordsworth's poetry?
  - a) It is a sign of the poet's emotional instability
  - b) It is a technique for creating abstract ideas in poetry
  - c) It is a way of expressing the intense emotions of everyday life
  - d) It is a sign of poor writing skills
9. What is the difference between "primary" and "secondary" imagination, according to Wordsworth?
  - a) Primary imagination is used in science, while secondary imagination is used in poetry
  - b) Primary imagination is innate, while secondary imagination is learned
  - c) Primary imagination deals with everyday life, while secondary imagination deals with abstract ideas
  - d) There is no difference between primary and secondary imagination
10. What is Wordsworth's view of the relationship between nature and the human mind?
  - a) Nature has no impact on the human mind
  - b) The human mind controls nature
  - c) The human mind and nature are interconnected and mutually influential
  - d) Nature is more important than the human mind

### Answers

1. (c)
2. (c)
3. (b)
4. (b)
5. (c)
6. (a)
7. (a)
8. (c)
9. (b)
10. (c)

### Try Yourself

1. Write a brief summary of the main arguments presented in the *Preface to Lyrical Ballads*.
2. Write a paragraph explaining Wordsworth's views on the relationship between poetry and everyday language.
3. Write a paragraph explaining Wordsworth's views on the role of the poet in society.
4. Write a paragraph explaining Wordsworth's views on the importance of emotion and imagination in poetry.
5. Write a paragraph explaining Wordsworth's views on the importance of nature in poetry.
6. Write a paragraph explaining what you think is the most important idea presented in the *Preface to Lyrical Ballads*. Why?

### Works Cited

- Agrawal, R. R. *The Medieval Revival and Its Influence on the Romantic Movement*. Abhinav Publications, 1990.
- Bushell, Sally. *The Cambridge Companion to "Lyrical Ballads"*. Cambridge University Press, 2020.
- Coleridge, Samuel Taylor. *Lyrical Ballads. With a Few Other Poems*. William Wordsworth, Payson & Clarke, 1798.
- Critchfield, Susan C. "Wordsworth and discovery: A romantic approach to composing." 1985.
- Dunn, Charles W. *The Role of the Poet in Early Societies*. Morton W. Bloomfield, Boydell & Brewer, 1992.
- Kamboj, Simran. "A Summary and Analysis of Wordsworth's Preface to Lyrical Ballads." *JETIR*, 2022.
- Khan, Faria Saeed. *Studies on Wordsworth. American International Journal of Contemporary Research*, 2013.
- Regier, Alexander. *Wordsworth's Poetic Theory: Knowledge, Language, Experience*. Stefan H. Uhlig, Palgrave Macmillan, 2010.
- Shahwan, Saed Jamil. "Wordsworth and the 18th Poetical Creative Ability." *Australian International Academic Centre PTY. LTD.*, 2019.

**:: STRUCTURE ::**

- 11.1 Unit Overview**
- 11.2 Objectives**
- 11.3 Learning Outcomes**
- 11.4 Introduction**
- 11.5 Brief Background of S. T. Coleridge**
- 11.6 Importance of *Biographia Literaria***
- 11.7 Coleridge's Philosophy of Imagination**
- 11.8 Definition of Imagination**
- 11.9 Coleridge's Theory of Imagination (Fancy and Imagination)**
- 11.10 The Role of Imagination in Literature**
- 11.11 Romanticism in *Biographia Literaria***
- 11.12 Coleridge's Influence on the Romantic Movement**
- 11.13 Coleridge's Rejection of Popular Literature**
- 11.14 Coleridge's Concept of the Poetic Genius**
- 11.15 Definition of a Poetic Genius**
- 11.16 Characteristics of a True Poet**
- 11.17 Coleridge's Belief in the Transcendental Nature of Poetry**
- 11.18 The Limits of Reason in Coleridge's Philosophy**
- 11.19 Coleridge's Distrust of Reason**
- 11.20 The Limitations of Reason in Understanding the World**
- 11.21 The Reliance on Intuition and Imagination**
- 11.22 The Relevance of *Biographia Literaria* to Contemporary Literature**
- 11.23 Coleridge's Contribution to Literature**

## 11.24 Conclusion

## 11.25 Key Points for Revision

- ❖ 11.26 Check Your Progress
- ❖ 11.27 Multiple Choice Questions
- ❖ 11.28 Try Yourself
- ❖ 11.29 Works Cited

---

## 11.1 UNIT OVERVIEW

---

In this unit, we will delve into the world of literary criticism through the study of Samuel Taylor Coleridge's *Biographia Literaria*. This work is a remarkable piece of literature that has become a classic in English literature. It embodies Coleridge's twenty years of speculation on the criticism and uses of poetry. Our aim in this unit is to help students understand the historical context of *Biographia Literaria*, its structure, major themes, and its impact on Romanticism and the world of literary criticism. We will explore Coleridge's literary and philosophical ideas, as well as his unique approach to literary analysis. Through our study of *Biographia Literaria*, we will gain an appreciation for the importance of literary criticism in the study of literature. We will develop critical thinking skills by analysing and interpreting complex literary texts and improve writing skills by producing well-reasoned and well-supported arguments about the text.

---

## 11.2 OBJECTIVES

---

- To introduce students to the literary and philosophical ideas of Samuel Taylor Coleridge.
- To provide historical and cultural context for the Romantic period in literature.
- To help students understand literary devices such as symbolism, imagery, and metaphor.

---

## 11.3 LEARNING OUTCOMES

---

By studying *Biographia Literaria*, a student will be able to:

- Analyse Coleridge's literary and philosophical ideas in *Biographia Literaria*.
- Understand the historical and cultural context of the Romantic period in literature.
- Develop critical thinking skills by analysing and interpreting complex literary texts.
- Improve writing skills by producing well-reasoned and well-supported arguments about the text.
- Demonstrate an understanding of literary devices such as symbolism, imagery, and metaphor.

- Gain an appreciation for the importance of literary criticism in the study of literature.

---

## **11.4 INTRODUCTION**

---

In this unit, we will study Samuel Taylor Coleridge's selections from *Biographia Literaria*, which is both literary criticism and autobiography. Coleridge was a major figure in English Romanticism, and *Biographia Literaria* is considered a significant work in the development of English literary criticism. We will learn about Coleridge's theories of imagination and creativity, as well as his unique approach to literary analysis. We will also discuss his idea of the “willing suspension of disbelief”. Through our study of *Biographia Literaria*, we will see how Coleridge combined scientific and literary thought to create a work that is both insightful and influential.

---

## **11.5 BRIEF BACKGROUND OF S. T. COLERIDGE**

---

Samuel Taylor Coleridge was an English poet, literary critic, and philosopher who lived from 1772 to 1834. He was born in Devon, England, and was the tenth child of Reverend John Coleridge. Coleridge was a talented child and showed an early aptitude for languages and literature. He attended Jesus College, Cambridge, but left without obtaining a degree. His life was marked by intellectual curiosity, a love of literature, and a struggle with addiction.

He was a close friend and collaborator of fellow Romantic poets William Wordsworth and Robert Southey, and together they founded a literary movement that emphasised imagination, symbolism, and emotion. Coleridge is best known for *The Rime of the Ancient Mariner* and *Kubla Khan*. In addition to his poetry, he wrote numerous works of criticism, including *Biographia Literaria*, a collection of autobiographical and critical essays exploring his ideas on literature and philosophy. Despite his troubled personal life, Coleridge left an enduring mark on English literature and remains an important figure in literary tradition.

---

## **11.6 IMPORTANCE OF BIOGRAPHIA LITERARIA**

---

*Biographia Literaria* by Samuel Taylor Coleridge is considered one of the most important literary works of the Romantic period. The book is significant not only for its literary criticism but also for its personal revelations about Coleridge's life, ideas, and influences. Its primary theme is the relationship between philosophy, poetry, and the poet. Coleridge argues that poetry is the expression of imagination, and that the poetic process is a means by which imagination becomes aware of itself and its role in meaning-making.

Moreover, *Biographia Literaria* presents Coleridge's theory of the “organic growth” of literature, emphasising the organic connection between a writer's life and their work. This theory suggests that literary works grow from the writer's inner life and reflect experiences, thoughts, and beliefs, making literature both a product of, and part of, the social and cultural context in which it is created. Coleridge's ideas influenced movements such as Transcendentalism, New Criticism, and modernist poetics. The work also shaped Romanticism by blending philosophical ideas with literary analysis and expanding the horizons of literary criticism.

---

## **11.7 COLERIDGE'S PHILOSOPHY OF IMAGINATION**

---

Coleridge's philosophy of imagination is a significant component of his aesthetics. For him, imagination is not a passive power used only to acquire knowledge; rather, it is an active power that brings together different images and ideas to create new ones. Imagination is the ability to see beyond what is immediately obvious and to discover new realities.

Coleridge believed imagination was a means of understanding the world not merely in a literal way but also in a figurative sense. Through poetic language, people are able to understand the world most fully because poetic language engages both sense perception and imagination. The imagination, therefore, enables a creative and illuminating unification of different elements. At its core, Coleridge's philosophy recognises the importance of non-rational aspects of experience and asserts that poetry is one of the most effective ways of capturing human creativity.

---

## **11.8 DEFINITION OF IMAGINATION**

---

Imagination, according to Coleridge in *Biographia Literaria*, is the power of creating images and ideas in the mind independent of sensory input. It is the capacity of the mind to form ideas, thoughts, and images not previously perceived in reality. This ability makes imagination an essential aspect of human consciousness, enabling individuals to explore emotions and experiences beyond the physical world.

While imagination is often associated with artistic and literary creativity, it is also fundamental to everyday life. It supports problem-solving by encouraging innovative thinking, and it plays a role in social and emotional intelligence by enabling empathy and understanding of others' perspectives. In short, imagination opens possibilities for intellectual and personal growth, making it crucial for a meaningful life.

---

## **11.9 COLERIDGE'S THEORY OF IMAGINATION (FANCY AND IMAGINATION)**

---

Coleridge distinguishes between fancy and imagination. Fancy refers to the associative power of the mind that creates new combinations out of existing materials, whereas imagination is a creative power that goes beyond association to produce new and original thought. He argues that imagination is not a passive receiver but an active creator of meaning.

For Coleridge, imagination is a unifying force integrating sensory experiences into a meaningful whole. He describes it as a "possession of the whole soul", transcending the limits of sense experience and moving towards higher truth. His theory of imagination revolutionised ideas about poetry and challenged dualistic views that separated mind from reality, stressing their interdependent nature.

---

## **11.10 THE ROLE OF IMAGINATION IN LITERATURE**

---

Coleridge believes imagination allows poets to create meaningful and enduring literature. He argues that imagination "shapes and harmonises the discordant elements of our world" and transforms the mundane into the extraordinary. Imagination is central not only to creating art but also to perceiving deeper meanings in ordinary experience.



For Coleridge, imagination helps readers see beyond surface appearances and grasp deeper truths. Literature, therefore, is not merely for entertainment but a means of exploring the complexities of human experience. By engaging with imaginative literature, individuals broaden perspectives, challenge assumptions, and develop deeper appreciation for the world. Coleridge also argues that imagination synthesises perception and reason, helping to understand philosophical and metaphysical ideas and enabling access to spiritual and creative dimensions beyond the material world.

---

### **11.11 ROMANTICISM IN *BIOGRAPHIA LITERARIA***

---

In *Biographia Literaria*, Coleridge provides a profound exploration of Romanticism, presenting it as an intellectual counterpoint to Enlightenment emphasis on reason and order. He suggests that Romantic writers valued imagination and emotion highly and sought to represent a wide range of human experiences, including the mystical and supernatural. Coleridge's own works, such as *Kubla Khan* and *The Rime of the Ancient Mariner*, reflect these Romantic principles.

Coleridge portrays Romanticism as rooted in the union of imagination and emotion. Art, he argues, arises from emotional landscapes rather than predetermined rational design. He claims art can serve as a bridge between the individual and the cosmos, enabling an artist to express experience and resonate with others. In this way, Coleridge presents Romanticism as admiring individual creativity, emotional expression, nature, and spiritual dimensions of existence.

---

### **11.12 COLERIDGE'S INFLUENCE ON THE ROMANTIC MOVEMENT**

---

As an important Romantic poet, Coleridge exerted far-reaching influence on Romanticism and its aesthetic values. His concept of imagination shaped the Romantic pursuit of the sublime and their interest in the supernatural and mysterious. His view of imagination as a creative and organic power that synthesises disparate elements into a unified whole became central to Romantic sensibility.

Coleridge's critical and philosophical writings explored imagination's relationship with transcendence, and emphasised subjectivity and the poet's inner life. His poetry—*The Rime of the Ancient Mariner*, *Kubla Khan*, and *Christabel*—illustrates Romantic themes through nature, Gothic elements, and the surreal. His influence is visible in poets like Wordsworth, Byron, Shelley, and Keats, making his role in Romanticism enduring both as poet and critic.

---

### **11.13 COLERIDGE'S REJECTION OF POPULAR LITERATURE**

---

In *Biographia Literaria*, Coleridge argues against popular literature, viewing it as lacking artistic merit and intellectual depth. He claims such literature caters to the masses, aiming only to entertain and generate profit. According to Coleridge, writers of popular literature rely on clichéd themes and tropes, lack originality, and appeal to readers' emotional tendencies rather than stimulating the mind.

Coleridge argues that popular literature dampens imagination and lowers intellectual capacity. Instead of elevating the mind and encouraging reflective thought, it subjugates the reader to the author's control. For Coleridge, the true function of literature is to guide readers towards higher intellectual and emotional understanding. He therefore encourages serious works with artistic integrity that challenge and stimulate thought, revealing his commitment to literature as a significant cultural force.

---

#### **11.14 COLERIDGE'S CONCEPT OF THE POETIC GENIUS**

---

Coleridge's concept of poetic genius differs from many of his contemporaries. He believes the poetic faculty is not confined to poets but is a universal human capacity requiring cultivation and access to imagination. For him, imagination recombines sensory experiences into new creations, and poetic genius lies in the ability to make imaginative connections.

Coleridge suggests that poetic genius includes the capacity to apprehend a vast web of relations, harmonies, and correspondences in the world. He distinguishes imagination from fancy: fancy combines existing images, whereas imagination recreates sensory experiences into new forms. Coleridge also views poetic genius as social and political, believing imagination can promote social change by helping individuals recognise and resist oppressive systems.

#### **11.15 DEFINITION OF A POETIC GENIUS**

A poetic genius, according to Coleridge, is someone with an inherent ability to create poetry that is imaginative, profound, and insightful. Such a writer creates beauty in language and imagery, while also engaging with deep ideas about life, nature, and humanity. Coleridge considers poetic genius rare, as it involves unique understanding of the world that can elevate and transform human experience.

He suggests that poetic geniuses are often visionary, able to see beyond surface reality and access hidden layers of truth. They combine sensitivity to human emotions with intellectual insight. Thus, poetic genius reflects vivid imagination, profound understanding of human nature, and the capacity to create meaningful art.

---

#### **11.16 CHARACTERISTICS OF A TRUE POET**

---

A true poet is characterised by a unique and original vision of the world and the ability to express that vision through words. A poet evokes emotion using vivid imagery and metaphor, and demonstrates understanding of human experience through poetic expression. A true poet captures the essence of a moment or feeling and conveys it in ways that transcend ordinary language.

Such poets make connections between seemingly unrelated things and transform those connections into meaningful and beautiful expression. They are not afraid to experiment with form and structure, using these tools to serve their vision rather than being constrained by conventions. A true poet, therefore, shows deep love for language and the ability to use it with power and elegance.

---

### **11.17 COLERIDGE'S BELIEF IN THE TRANSCENDENTAL NATURE OF POETRY**

---

Coleridge's belief in poetry's transcendental nature is central to his understanding of literary expression. He argues that poetic language can reach beyond everyday experience to access deeper truths and higher spiritual realities. For him, the poet is not merely a craftsman of words but a visionary who can access intuitive knowledge through art.

Coleridge believes poetry can shape and transform individual psychology as well as social and cultural life. Its transcendental power lies in its ability to unify fragmented aspects of human existence, enabling a sense of wholeness. This belief aligns with his wider philosophy, which values imagination and intuition as paths to understanding reality, making poetry a vehicle for transcendence rather than mere entertainment.

---

### **11.18 THE LIMITS OF REASON IN COLERIDGE'S PHILOSOPHY**

---

Coleridge's belief in the limits of reason is an integral part of his philosophy. Although he acknowledges reason's importance, he argues that it cannot fully explain the complexity and mystery of existence. Reason, he suggests, can go only so far in understanding reality, and beyond that lies a realm accessible through imagination and intuition.

He calls this realm the "super-sensuous", the source of creativity, inspiration, and higher knowledge. Coleridge believed exploring beyond reason is necessary for fuller understanding. This emphasis on imagination and intuition has influenced literature and philosophy, reminding readers that not all truths are attainable through rational analysis alone.

---

### **11.19 COLERIDGE'S DISTRUST OF REASON**

---

In paragraph 22 of *Biographia Literaria*, Coleridge discusses his distrust of reason. He believed modern thinkers placed too much emphasis on intellect while neglecting emotions and intuition. For Coleridge, reason and analysis were not the only ways of knowing.

He argued that reason alone cannot explain experiences such as dreams, hallucinations, and altered states of consciousness, which may reveal deeper truths about reality. Coleridge felt reason is limited in grasping natural complexity and human consciousness, and he warned against relying solely on rationality. His distrust of reason reflects his belief in imagination, creativity, and intuition as essential for broad human understanding.

---

### **11.20 THE LIMITATIONS OF REASON IN UNDERSTANDING THE WORLD**

---

Coleridge argues that reason is valuable but limited. Reason depends on empirical evidence and perception, which can produce restricted and sometimes distorted understanding. It can analyse and categorise what is already perceived, but many dimensions of reality remain beyond its scope.

Coleridge suggests imagination and intuition are necessary to transcend reason's limitations and grasp reality more fully. By relying only on reason, individuals may miss spiritual and metaphysical dimensions. Reason may also

lead to reductionism, reducing complex phenomena to simplistic explanations. Thus, Coleridge urges recognition of reason's limits and the cultivation of imagination and intuition for deeper understanding.

---

### **11.21 THE RELIANCE ON INTUITION AND IMAGINATION**

---

Coleridge believed intuition and imagination should augment rational intellect rather than oppose it. He criticised those who relied solely on reason, arguing imagination and intuition provide insights unavailable through logic or empirical data. He considered imagination closer to the divine because it creates innovative ideas that expand the boundaries of understanding.

For Coleridge, intuition and imagination are especially necessary in poetry and the creative arts. He believed poetry is superior to other forms because it depends on imagination and intuition and can capture reality's essence and emotions more profoundly than prose. Therefore, he encouraged cultivating these faculties to enrich life and broaden understanding.

---

### **11.22 THE RELEVANCE OF *BIOGRAPHIA LITERARIA* TO CONTEMPORARY LITERATURE**

---

*Biographia Literaria* remains relevant to contemporary literature because of Coleridge's innovative ideas about imagination and reason. He argues imagination is intertwined with reason and essential for profound artistic work. This idea connects with modernist and postmodernist writing, which often explores language's limits and challenges conventional storytelling.

Authors such as James Joyce, Virginia Woolf, and Jorge Luis Borges drew inspiration from Coleridge's view of imagination shaping meaning and perception. His emphasis on subjective experience has also influenced movements such as magical realism and feminist literary traditions. Thus, *Biographia Literaria* continues to be a seminal work in literary theory.

---

### **11.23 COLERIDGE'S CONTRIBUTION TO LITERATURE**

---

Coleridge was one of the most innovative thinkers of his time, and his ideas still influence literary criticism and theory. *Biographia Literaria* reflects his belief in imagination, symbolism, and the power of language. His insistence on unity between reason and imagination helped shape later developments in literature and criticism, including modernist approaches.

Coleridge also introduced English audiences to ideas from German Romanticism. Alongside his achievements as a critic and philosopher, he remains celebrated as a poet for the beauty and psychological depth of his writing. His vision of literature as a living force speaking to human experience continues to inspire and challenge readers and scholars.

---

### **11.24 CONCLUSION**

---

S. T. Coleridge's *Biographia Literaria* is an important literary work that offers valuable insight into the Romantic period and English literature. Through autobiographical reflection and critical analysis, Coleridge presents his creative process and the cultural trends shaping his writing. He emphasises imaginative freedom and individual expression, rejecting rigid neoclassical conventions in favour of organic literary form.

Although aspects of his theory may appear dated by modern standards, Coleridge's belief in art's transformative power and the significance of personal experience remains enduring. His discussion of imagination, creativity, and aesthetic experience continues to make *Biographia Literaria* a vital resource for literary study, and his vision remains relevant today.

---

### 11.25 KEY POINTS FOR REVISION

---

- Coleridge's life was marked by intellectual curiosity, love of literature, and a struggle with addiction.
- Coleridge is best known for *The Rime of the Ancient Mariner* and *Kubla Khan*.
- *Biographia Literaria* is one of the most important literary works of the Romantic period.
- Coleridge's theory of "organic growth" emphasises the connection between a writer's life and work.
- Imagination plays vital roles in problem-solving, social and emotional intelligence, and artistic creativity.
- Imagination is an active power that brings together different images and ideas to create new ones.
- Poetry engages both sense perception and imagination for fuller understanding.
- Coleridge emphasises non-rational aspects of experience and poetry's ability to capture creativity.
- Romanticism values deeper truths, including spiritual and supernatural elements, as facets of human existence.

#### ❖ Check Your Progress

##### Short Questions

1. What is the main subject matter of *Biographia Literaria*?
2. Who was Samuel Taylor Coleridge and what was his role in the Romantic movement?
3. What is the difference between primary and secondary imagination, according to Coleridge?
4. What is the relationship between poetry and philosophy in *Biographia Literaria*?
5. What is the meaning of the term "organic form" in Coleridge's literary theory?
6. What is the significance of the poem *Kubla Khan* in *Biographia Literaria*?
7. How does Coleridge define the term "fancy" and how does it differ from "imagination"?

## ❖ Answers

1. The main subject matter is Coleridge's literary and philosophical ideas, and his reflections on the nature and function of literature.
2. Coleridge was a poet, critic, and philosopher and a leading figure in the Romantic movement in English literature.
3. The primary imagination creates and shapes sensory experience, while the secondary imagination creates and shapes artistic and imaginative experience.
4. Coleridge argues poetry and philosophy are interconnected, with poetry expressing philosophical ideas in vivid and imaginative form.
5. "Organic form" suggests a work should be structured like a living organism, with each part contributing to unity and coherence.
6. *Kubla Khan* exemplifies Coleridge's ideas about imagination and inspiration in poetic creation.
7. "Fancy" concerns surface impressions and association, while "imagination" is a deeper creative power that transforms impressions into something new.

## ❖ Multiple Choice Questions

1. What is the subtitle of *Biographia Literaria*?
  - A. An Autobiography
  - B. Essays on Literature and Philosophy
  - C. A Critical Analysis
  - D. A History of English Literature
2. According to Coleridge, what is the difference between "wit" and "humour"?
  - A. Wit is based on reason, while humour is based on emotion.
  - B. Wit is based on language, while humour is based on action.
  - C. Wit is based on satire, while humour is based on irony.
  - D. Wit is based on surprise, while humour is based on incongruity.
3. What is the significance of "suspension of disbelief" in Coleridge's theory of poetry?
  - A. It refers to the reader's willingness to accept the reality of the fictional world created by the poet.
  - B. It refers to the poet's ability to create realistic characters and situations.
  - C. It refers to the poet's use of metaphor and other devices to create meaning.
  - D. It refers to the reader's emotional response to the poem.
4. According to Coleridge, what is the function of poetry?
  - A. To entertain and amuse readers
  - B. To provide moral instruction

- C. To express philosophical ideas in a vivid and imaginative way
  - D. To document historical events and social movements
5. What is Coleridge's definition of a "symbol"?
    - A. A word or phrase that stands for something else
    - B. An object or image that represents an abstract idea or concept
    - C. A figure of speech that uses exaggeration for effect
    - D. A type of metaphor that compares two unlike things
  6. What is Coleridge's definition of "imagination"?
    - A. The ability to come up with new ideas
    - B. The ability to remember past experiences
    - C. The ability to perceive sensory information
    - D. The ability to transform sensory information into something new and original
  7. What is Coleridge's definition of "fancy"?
    - A. The ability to create vivid sensory impressions
    - B. The ability to think logically and rationally
    - C. The ability to remember past experiences
    - D. The ability to transform sensory impressions into something new and original
  8. In *Biographia Literaria*, Coleridge argues that poetry should be written in what kind of language?
    - A. Simple and straightforward
    - B. Ornate and decorative
    - C. Natural and unadorned
    - D. Symbolic and metaphorical
  9. According to Coleridge, what is the difference between "reason" and "understanding"?
    - A. Reason is concerned with practical matters, while understanding is concerned with abstract ideas.
    - B. Reason is based on empirical evidence, while understanding is based on intuition.
    - C. Reason is concerned with logic, while understanding is concerned with perception.
    - D. Reason is concerned with universal truths, while understanding is concerned with individual experiences.
  10. What does Coleridge mean by "secondary imagination"?
    - A. The ability to perceive sensory information
    - B. The ability to create new ideas
    - C. The ability to create artistic or imaginative works
    - D. The ability to remember past experiences

11. What does Coleridge mean by “organic form”?
  - A. A structure that follows a strict formula or pattern
  - B. A structure that reflects natural patterns or rhythms
  - C. A structure that emphasises symbolism and metaphor
  - D. A structure that uses repetition for effect
12. According to Coleridge, what is the relationship between poetry and philosophy?
  - A. Poetry should be divorced from philosophy entirely.
  - B. Poetry should express philosophical ideas in vivid and imaginative ways.
  - C. Philosophy should be used to interpret poetry.
  - D. Poetry and philosophy are unrelated disciplines.

### **Answer Key**

1. C
2. D
3. A
4. C
5. B
6. D
7. A
8. C
9. C
10. C
11. B
12. B

### **Try Yourself**

1. Write a brief summary of the main arguments presented in *Biographia Literaria*.
2. Write a short essay analysing Coleridge’s ideas about literature.
3. Write a paragraph explaining Coleridge’s views on the role of imagination in literature.
4. Write a paragraph explaining Coleridge’s views on the relationship between poetry and philosophy.
5. Write a paragraph explaining Coleridge’s views on the importance of the creative process in literature.
6. Write a paragraph explaining Coleridge’s views on the importance of symbolism in literature.



7. Write a short essay discussing how *Biographia Literaria* is relevant to contemporary literary criticism.

### Works Cited

- ❖ Coleridge, Samuel Taylor. "Biographia Literaria." Or, *Biographical Sketches of My Literary Life and Opinions*, R. Fenner, 1834.
- Coleridge, Samuel Taylor. *The Works of Samuel Taylor Coleridge. Prose and Verse*, Crissy & Markley, 1853.
- De Vere, Aubrey. *Essays Chiefly on Poetry*. Macmillan and Company, 1887.
- Gallant, Christine. *Coleridge's Theory of Imagination Today*. AMS Press, 1989.
- Gingerich, Solomon Francis. "From Necessity to Transcendentalism in Coleridge." Modern Language Association of America, 1920.
- Gokak, Vinayak Krishna. *Coleridge's Aesthetics*. Abhinav Publications, 1975.
- Harter, Joel. "Coleridge's Philosophy of Faith." *Symbol, Allegory, and Hermeneutics*, Mohr Siebeck, 2011.
- Stokoe, Frank Woodyer. *German Influence in the English Romantic Period, 1788–1818, with Special Reference to Scott, Coleridge, Shelley and Byron*. The University Press, 1926.

**:: STRUCTURE ::****12.0 Objectives****12.1 Introduction****12.2 Mary Wollstonecraft's Life and Thoughts****12.3 Analysis of *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman*****12.4 The Literary and Social Background of *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman*****12.5 Relevance of *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman* in the 21<sup>st</sup> Century****12.6 Let Us Sum Up****12.7 Keywords****12.8 Suggested Readings****❖ Check Your Progress**

---

**12.0 OBJECTIVES**

---

In this Unit, you shall

- Understand the social, literary, and historical context of the 18<sup>th</sup> century and the issues faced by women
- Get an insight into the early feminist thought in the West and its impact on later feminist movements
- Comprehend the concepts like gender equality and their larger implications
- Realise the need for education of women for gender equality and the overall progress of society
- To explore the impact of Wollstonecraft's ideas in contemporary times.

On completing the Unit, you should be able to

- Understand the 18<sup>th</sup>-century background with reference to women's issues.
- Know about the life and thoughts of Mary Wollstonecraft who was one of the early feminists and will be able to appreciate her contribution
- Analyse in detail the gender issues raised in the seminal work and its history and legacy
- Reflect on the relevance of Wollstonecraft's thoughts in the 21<sup>st</sup> century.

---

## 12.1 INTRODUCTION

---

Mary Wollstonecraft was an influential English writer, philosopher, and advocate for women's rights who lived from 1759 to 1797. She is best known for her ground-breaking work *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman: With Strictures from Political and Moral Subjects* (1792), which laid the foundation for modern feminism. Wollstonecraft's ideas challenged traditional gender roles, arguing for education and empowerment of women to achieve social and intellectual equality with men. Through the Unit we shall explore the significance of *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman* as a transformative and influential text within the feminist movement, highlighting its key arguments and lasting impact on gender equality.

---

## 12.2 MARY WOLLSTONECRAFT'S LIFE AND THOUGHTS

---

A reader and critic of Mary Wollstonecraft should know about her personal life which impacted her thought process, reflected through her works. Born in London, Mary Wollstonecraft grew up in a turbulent family environment. She was the second eldest of seven children. Her father had delusions of being a gentleman farmer and lost most of the family's modest fortune in this race. Subsequently, there was enough money for one child to go to school. Her eldest brother was educated as a lawyer. She was initiated into self-education by a clergyman and his wife whom she had befriended. She was largely self-taught and had been a prolific reader. She was fiercely proud of the education she gave herself due to her voracious reading and intellectual curiosity.

Mary went to stay with Eliza, her sister, and her husband upon the birth of their first child. For unclear reasons, she convinced Eliza to abandon her husband and, as a result, her child. The baby died eight months later. Public opinion blamed Wollstonecraft for this death.

Mary fell in love in 1792 with Gilbert Imlay, an American merchant, and author traveling in France. She went with Imlay to France posing as his wife. Imlay was a crushing blow to her due to his unfaithfulness and he never married her. She had one out-of-wedlock daughter with him. Mary attempted suicide twice after having a daughter with Imlay. She ended relations with Imlay in 1796. In 1796-97, she came close to William Godwin, a philosopher whom she had met before. They married in March 1797 to hide the fact that Mary was pregnant with their first child- Mary Shelly. She died a painful death in September 1797 after contracting an infection during difficult labour.

Thus, her life was much stormy throughout which is reflected in her revolutionary thoughts.

One year after the death of Mary, William Godwin wrote *Memoirs of the Author of a 'Vindication of the Rights of Woman'*. Though Godwin apparently wanted to honour and celebrate her unconventional style, however, his memoir, did the contrary and damaged her reputation at least for a century. Some say it was needlessly forthright on aspects of her life such as - her involvement with her sister's wedding, her affairs, her posing to be married when she was not, and her child born out of wedlock.

She writes about 'virtue' but her life is seen as far from virtuous. She was dismissed as immoral and a hypocrite.

Horace Walpole, a politician and historian wrote about her:

"Adieu, thou are an excellent woman! Thou reverse of that hyena in petticoats, Mary Wollstonecraft."

In general, her work was largely ignored and ridiculed until the 20th century because of her scandalous personal life.

Wollstonecraft embarked on a career as a writer, contributing articles and reviews to various publications. Prior to writing the work in the discussion, she wrote *Vindication of the Rights of Man* in response to Burke and published that piece anonymously

She gained recognition for her book *Thoughts on the Education of Daughters* (1787), which advocated for a more progressive approach to educating girls. Even though she wrote novels for a living, she was worried about the moral ramifications of novel reading even of highbrow novels. She, along with her sister, opened an all-girls school, though it had to be shut eventually.

Although Wollstonecraft's ideas faced significant criticism and controversy during her lifetime, her influence grew steadily in the years following her death. Her work laid the foundation for the first wave of feminism and continues to inspire feminist thought and activism to this day. Wollstonecraft's ideas on education, reason, and women's rights remain relevant and continue to shape discussions on gender equality and social justice.

---

## 12.3 ANALYSIS OF A *VINDICATION OF THE RIGHTS OF WOMAN*

---

### **Analysis of the Main Ideas of *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman: With Strictures on Political and Moral Subjects***

The seminal work propelled Wollstonecraft into the forefront of feminist discourse. In it, she argued that women's inferior position in society was primarily due to their lack of education and limited opportunities. She called for equal education for both sexes, emphasizing the importance of reason, virtue, and independence for women. As one of the foundational texts of feminist thought, it challenged prevailing notions of women as inherently inferior and argued for their intellectual, social, and political equality. Her work inspired generations of feminist thinkers and activists, contributing to the emergence of the women's suffrage movement in the 19th and 20th centuries.

Mary Wollstonecraft's contributions to feminism and her advocacy for women's rights have had a profound and lasting impact. Her writings challenged societal norms, offering a powerful critique of gender inequality and calling for women's education and empowerment. Her ideas continue to inspire and inform contemporary discussions on gender, feminism, and social justice, making her a significant figure in the history of women's rights and a pioneer of feminist thought.

Wollstonecraft also challenged the prevailing ideals of beauty that objectified and limited women. She criticized the societal emphasis on physical appearance, arguing that it detracted from women's intellectual and moral development. She called for a shift in focus from external beauty to the cultivation of inner virtues and intellectual pursuits. She argues that women

possess the same capacity for reason and rationality as men. She advocated for the recognition of women's rationality and reasoning abilities. She rejected the prevailing notion of women as inherently emotional and irrational beings, arguing that women are capable of critical thinking and moral decision-making. She criticizes the predominant view that women are inherently inferior, asserting that denying them access to education and intellectual development perpetuates their subordination.

Education is significant in empowering women and enabling their active participation in society. She calls for equal opportunities for women to receive a comprehensive education, enabling them to fulfill their potential and contribute to the betterment of society. Wollstonecraft argued vehemently for equal education for women. She criticized the prevailing educational system that restricted women's learning as she emphasized that women have the same intellectual capabilities as men and should have access to education to develop their talents and contribute to society.

"First of all, the questions relative to their education cannot be separated here from the investigation of their political rights: for in bringing them up, it is very necessary to know what they are destined for. If we acknowledge the same rights for them as for men, then they must be given the same means to make use of them. If we think that their lot should be only domestic happiness and the duties of inner life, then they must be formed early to do this job." (P. 390)

"Education should be available to both. It is a common good on what principle could one of the two be disinherited by the society which protects the rights of all." (P. 395)

Women should be educated to have control over themselves:

"Educate women like men,' says Rousseau, "and the more they resemble our sex the less power will they have over us." This is the very point I aim at, I do not wish them to have power over men; but over themselves." (Pg. 179)

Wollstonecraft underscores the significance of educating women as mothers, as they play a crucial role in the upbringing and education of future generations. She believes that educated mothers can raise enlightened and virtuous citizens, contributing to the overall progress of society.

"Now it seems incontestable to us that common happiness, especially that of women, requires that they do not aspire to the exercise of political rights and duties." (P.397)

Wollstonecraft critiqued the institution of marriage as a form of social and economic bondage for women. She criticized the unequal power dynamics within marriage and argued for the importance of mutual respect and companionship. She envisioned a society where men and women entered into marriage as equals, rather than perpetuating systems of male dominance and female subjugation. She advocates for marriages based on reciprocated respect and affection rather than financial arrangements, highlighting the importance of personal fulfillment and happiness in relationships.

Traditional gender roles that relegate women to the domestic sphere, and consider them mere ornaments or objects of desire, are challenged. She advocates for the expansion of women's roles beyond the household, arguing

for their involvement in various professions and public life. Wollstonecraft called for women's social and political equality. She argued that women should have the right to participate in public life, engage in political discussions, and be granted legal and property rights.

"Now it seems incontestable to us that common happiness, especially that of women, requires that they do not aspire to the exercise of political rights and duties." (Pg 397)

Wollstonecraft believed that women's active involvement in society was essential for societal progress and the attainment of a just and equitable society.

Wollstonecraft's essay goes beyond advocating for the rights of women alone. She calls for comprehensive social reforms that tackle issues of inequality, poverty, and education for all members of society, emphasizing the interconnectedness of these social issues. Wollstonecraft insists on the recognition of women as equal citizens with the same rights as men. She argues for women's suffrage, economic independence, and equal legal rights, believing that these advancements are crucial for achieving gender equality.

She strongly advocates against women's objectification and exhorts men must stop treating women as sexual objects:

"Men are not aware of the misery they cause, and the vicious weakness they cherish, by only inciting women to render themselves as pleasing; they do not consider that they thus make natural and artificial duties clash, by sacrificing the comfort and respectability of a woman's life to voluptuous notions of beauty, when in nature they all harmonise." (Pg 279)

"Exalted by their inferiority (this sounds like a contradiction) they constantly demand homage as women, though experience should teach them that the men [who praise them] . . . , are the most inclined to tyrannise over, and despise, the very weakness they cherish." (Pg. 170)

"The passions of men have thus placed women on thrones and till, mankind become more reasonable. it is to be feared that women will avail themselves of the power which they attain with the least exertion and which is the most indisputable." (Pg 171)

One's virginity cannot be a virtue. It can be lost against one's will and without one's consent.

"For, miserable beyond all names of misery is the condition of a being, who can be degraded without its own consent!" (Pg. 191)

According to Wollstonecraft, the cultivation of virtue and morality is essential for both men and women. She rejects the notion that women should solely focus on physical beauty and instead encourage the development of intellectual and moral virtues to contribute meaningfully to society. Wollstonecraft also emphasizes the importance of empathy and sensibility in human interactions. She contends that by nurturing these qualities, individuals can gain a deeper understanding of others' experiences and foster compassion, ultimately leading to a more just and equitable society. Wollstonecraft also stresses the need for intellectual companionship between men and women, advocating for equal partnerships based on mutual respect, shared interests, and intellectual stimulation.

*A Vindication of the Rights of Woman* encapsulates Wollstonecraft's groundbreaking arguments and ideas, which challenged the prevailing gender norms and laid the foundation for the feminist movement.

---

## **12.4 THE LITERARY AND SOCIAL BACKGROUND OF A VINDICATION OF THE RIGHTS OF WOMAN**

---

To fully grasp the significance of Wollstonecraft's work, it is essential to explore the literary and social background against which the text emerged. Let us examine the literary movements, intellectual influences, and societal context that shaped Wollstonecraft's revolutionary treatise.

Wollstonecraft's work was deeply influenced by the Enlightenment, an intellectual movement that prioritized reason, individual liberty, and social progress. It questioned traditional social and political structures, advocating for the application of reason to address societal issues. Drawing inspiration from Enlightenment thinkers like John Locke and Jean-Jacques Rousseau,

A significant catalyst for Wollstonecraft's response was Jean-Jacques Rousseau's *Emile* (1762), an influential educational treatise. In this work, Rousseau proposed an educational model that emphasized men's physical strength and intellectual pursuits while relegating women to domestic roles. Wollstonecraft vehemently disagreed with Rousseau's portrayal of women as passive and subordinate, arguing that such limited educational opportunities perpetuated women's oppression and hindered their potential.

Emerging as a direct response to Rousseau's influential work "Emilius and Sophia: A New System of Education" published in 1762, the fifth book titled "Sophia" offers a contrasting perspective. Rousseau's narrative argues that it is not beneficial for a man to be alone and introduces Emilius, who is in need of a companion. This companion is none other than Sophia.

Wollstonecraft argued that virtue is singular and eternal, there is not one measurement of virtue for men, and a different one for women. There is only one measurement of virtue for all humanity. She used rational arguments to challenge prevailing social and educational norms that restricted women's rights and opportunities. The broader intellectual movement of the Enlightenment, with its emphasis on reason, individual rights, and social progress, profoundly influenced Wollstonecraft's thinking and provided a philosophical foundation for her arguments.

Thomas Paine's *Rights of Man* (1791) provided a political and philosophical backdrop for Wollstonecraft's feminist discourse. Paine argued for the natural rights of all individuals, including women, promoting the principles of equality, liberty, and justice. Wollstonecraft drew inspiration from Paine's ideas, extending them to the realm of gender, and asserting that women, as rational beings, should enjoy the same rights and privileges as men.

The popular novels of Samuel Richardson, particularly *Pamela* (1740) and *Clarissa* (1748), also played a role in shaping Wollstonecraft's thinking. These novels depicted virtuous yet passive female characters whose primary aim was to gain male approval and secure marriage. Wollstonecraft criticised the portrayal of women as mere objects of desire and argued for a more active and empowered role for women in society.

Wollstonecraft built upon the feminist intellectual heritage that preceded her, engaging with writers such as Mary Astell and Judith Sargent Murray. These earlier writers had already begun questioning the subordinate status of women and advocating for their education and social equality. Wollstonecraft expanded upon their ideas, offering a systematic critique of societal expectations and arguing for the necessity of women's education for their empowerment and autonomy.

Wollstonecraft's immersion in literature profoundly influenced the style and impact of her work. As an avid reader and skilled writer, she actively engaged with prominent literary figures of her time, including her partner William Godwin, a renowned philosopher. The Romantic movement, known for its focus on emotions and individualism, also left its imprint on her writing style. Wollstonecraft's passionate and compelling prose, blending rational arguments with emotional appeals, greatly enhanced the potency and enduring influence of *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman*.

Wollstonecraft wrote within a social context characterised by pervasive gender inequality and the systematic curtailment of women's rights. Women were expected to confine themselves to domestic roles, being denied access to education, professional prospects, and participation in public affairs. In direct opposition to these societal norms, Wollstonecraft's work boldly contested their legitimacy, emphasizing the transformative power of education and rational thinking in emancipating women and advocating for their equal rights and opportunities.

*A Vindication of the Rights of Woman* emerged from a vibrant tapestry of literary and social influences that profoundly shaped its ideas and impact. Drawing inspiration from Enlightenment philosophy, the legacy of feminist intellectuals, and the dynamic literary movements of her time, Wollstonecraft masterfully constructed a compelling argument in favor of women's rights and social parity. Standing resolute against the prevailing restrictions that marginalized women and curtailed their agency, Wollstonecraft's treatise serves as an enduring testament to her unwavering determination to challenge the established order and champion the rights and liberation of women.

---

## **12.5 RELEVANCE OF A VINDICATION OF THE RIGHTS OF WOMAN IN THE 21<sup>ST</sup> CENTURY**

---

*A Vindication of the Rights of Woman* remains relevant in contemporary times due to its unwavering advocacy for gender equality, education, challenging societal norms, and promoting women's political participation. It had a profound and lasting impact on feminist discourse, paving the way for subsequent feminist movements, including the suffrage movement, first-wave feminism, and beyond. Her bold arguments challenged deeply ingrained societal norms and laid the foundation for future feminist movements. Despite the radical nature of her ideas for her time, her work continues to inspire ongoing efforts to achieve gender parity and dismantle systemic barriers that hinder women's progress. Wollstonecraft's legacy endures, igniting the flame of feminism and propelling the ongoing struggle for gender equity and the empowerment of women in all areas of life.

Wollstonecraft's advocacy for women's political engagement is as relevant now as it was in the 18th century. While progress has been made, women's



representation in politics remains unequal and underrepresented. Wollstonecraft's call for women's active participation and influence in political decision-making resonates in the ongoing fight for gender-balanced representation in government and policymaking.

Further, although Wollstonecraft primarily focused on the rights of white, middle-class women, her work laid the foundation for intersectional feminism. Contemporary discussions on feminism acknowledge the interconnected nature of gender with other dimensions of identity, such as race, class, sexuality, and ability. Wollstonecraft's emphasis on equality and inclusion provides a basis for exploring and addressing these intersecting forms of oppression.

Her work serves as a resounding testament to the significance of informed and constructive criticism. In an era dominated by online discourse and social media, Wollstonecraft's plea for thoughtful analysis, avoidance of hasty judgments, and the promotion of respectful dialogue assumes heightened relevance. It serves as an encouragement for individuals to become discerning critical thinkers and actively engage in responsible and well-informed discussions.

Wollstonecraft's enduring relevance stems from her tireless advocacy for gender equality, education, the challenging of societal norms, and the promotion of women's political participation. Her influential body of work continues to inspire and shape contemporary feminist discourse, underscoring the ongoing struggle for achieving gender equity and the imperative of empowering women in all spheres of life.

*A Vindication of the Rights of Woman* left an indelible mark on feminist thought, despite its radical nature for its time. It paved the way for subsequent waves of feminism, including the suffrage movement and the first wave of feminism, and its influence extended far beyond. By challenging the prevailing patriarchal system and instigating debates on gender equality, Wollstonecraft's work left an enduring imprint on generations of feminists to come. It remains a beacon of relevance, inspiring ongoing endeavors to dismantle systemic barriers and achieve gender parity. Wollstonecraft's courage to pen such ideas during an era when they were considered radical underscores her pivotal role in challenging deeply ingrained societal norms and laying the foundation for future feminist movements.

---

## 12.6 LET US SUM UP

---

In this Unit, you have learned:

1. About Mary Wollstonecraft,
2. The milieu in which she wrote,
3. The major points of *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman*, and
4. its relevance in contemporary times.

---

## 12.7 KEYWORDS

---

<b>Subordination</b>	The act of being subordinate or lower in rank or position.
<b>Prejudice</b>	Preconceived opinion or bias, often unfavorable, formed without sufficient knowledge or experience.
<b>Peremptorily</b>	In a commanding or authoritative manner, leaving no room for refusal or contradiction.
<b>Fortitude</b>	Courage in facing difficulties or challenges.
<b>Supposition</b>	An assumption or belief based on limited evidence or knowledge.
<b>Disquisition</b>	A detailed and systematic investigation or analysis of a topic.
<b>Presume</b>	To take for granted or assume something to be true without proof or certainty.
<b>Conjecture</b>	A guess or inference based on incomplete or uncertain information.
<b>Salutary</b>	Beneficial or promoting health and well-being.
<b>Tyrannical</b>	Exercising power in a cruel or arbitrary manner; oppressive.
<b>Indolent</b>	Lazy or avoiding exertion; inactive.
<b>Prevalent</b>	Widespread or commonly occurring.
<b>Inculcate</b>	To instill or teach by repetition or persistent instruction.
<b>Rationale</b>	The underlying reason or justification for something.
<b>Dissipated</b>	Squandered or wasted, especially through excessive indulgence in pleasure.
<b>Expostulate</b>	To reason earnestly with someone in an attempt to dissuade or correct their actions.
<b>Assimilate</b>	To absorb or integrate into a larger group or culture.
<b>Propriety</b>	Conformity to accepted standards or behavior; appropriateness.
<b>Blatant</b>	Obvious, conspicuous, or flagrant.
<b>Culpable</b>	Deserving blame or censure; guilty.

### ❖ Check Your Progress 1

#### 1. What is the main argument of *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman*?

- Women should have equal rights to men in all areas of life.
- Women are inherently superior to men.
- Women should focus on domestic duties rather than seeking rights.
- Women should only be educated in certain subjects.

**2. According to Wollstonecraft, what is the primary reason for women's inferior position in society?**

- a) Biological differences between men and women
- b) Lack of educational opportunities for women
- c) Women's inherent intellectual inferiority
- d) Cultural and societal expectations

**3. What does Wollstonecraft argue about women's education in her work?**

- a) Women should receive the same education as men.
- b) Women should only be educated in practical skills.
- c) Women should focus solely on domestic education.
- d) Women do not need education at all.

**4. Which writer does Wollstonecraft critique for promoting a harmful view of women in her work?**

- a) William Shakespeare
- b) John Locke
- c) Jean-Jacques Rousseau
- d) Thomas Hobbes

**5. Wollstonecraft argues that women's dependence on men leads to:**

- a) Happiness and fulfillment
- b) Economic stability
- c) Inequality and oppression
- d) Harmonious relationships

**6. What does Wollstonecraft propose as a solution to improve women's position in society?**

- a) Political revolution
- b) Economic reforms
- c) Educational reform and equal opportunities
- d) Separation of men and women

**7. Which rights does Wollstonecraft specifically advocate for women to have?**

- a) Voting rights and political participation
- b) Property rights and economic independence
- c) Education rights and intellectual development
- d) All of the above

**8. How does Wollstonecraft challenge the prevailing notion of women as solely objects of beauty and sensibility?**

- a) By promoting women's physical appearance as a means to gain power
- b) By emphasizing women's intellectual capabilities and rationality
- c) By advocating for women to focus on domestic roles and responsibilities
- d) By critiquing women's involvement in the arts and literature

**9. What impact did Wollstonecraft's *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman* have on the feminist movement?**

- a) It had little to no impact at the time of its publication.
- b) It sparked immediate societal changes and led to women's rights advancements.
- c) It laid the foundation for future feminist movements and ideas.
- d) It was widely criticized and rejected by other women writers.

**Answers: 1-a, 2-b, 3-a, 4-c, 5-c, 6-c, 7-d, 8-b, 9-c**

**Check Your Progress 2 (Short Answer)**

1. What is the main purpose of Mary Wollstonecraft's *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman*?
2. How does Wollstonecraft critique the prevailing notion of women's education during her time?
3. What does Wollstonecraft argue regarding women's intellectual capabilities?
4. How does Wollstonecraft view the relationship between reason and women's rights?
5. What role does Wollstonecraft attribute to women in society, particularly in the context of marriage and motherhood?
6. How does Wollstonecraft challenge the idea of women as mere objects of beauty or pleasure?
7. What are Wollstonecraft's views on the concept of gender equality?
8. How does Wollstonecraft respond to the argument that women should solely focus on domestic duties?
9. According to Wollstonecraft, what are the potential benefits of granting women equal rights and education?

**Check Your Progress 3 (Long Answer)**

1. Discuss Mary Wollstonecraft's main arguments in *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman* and how she challenges the prevailing views on women's education and societal roles.
2. Analyse Wollstonecraft's critique of the gendered expectations placed on women, particularly in relation to marriage, motherhood, and domesticity.

3. Examine Wollstonecraft's views on the importance of education for women and how she argues for equal access to education. How does she connect education to women's empowerment and societal progress?
4. Discuss the role of reason and rationality in Wollstonecraft's argument for women's rights. How does she challenge the notion that women are inherently inferior or incapable of intellectual pursuits?
5. Evaluate Wollstonecraft's response to the idea that women should prioritise their physical appearance and charm. How does she advocate for women's agency and their ability to contribute to society beyond superficial qualities?
6. Explore Wollstonecraft's vision of gender equality. How does she argue for equal rights, opportunities, and responsibilities for men and women? Discuss the potential benefits she highlights in achieving such equality.
7. Consider the historical and social context in which Wollstonecraft wrote *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman*. How did her work contribute to the broader movement for women's rights during the Enlightenment era?
8. Examine the reception and impact of Wollstonecraft's work. How did *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman* influence subsequent feminist movements and the broader discourse on women's rights?
9. Reflect on the contemporary relevance of Wollstonecraft's ideas in *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman*. To what extent have her arguments and calls for gender equality been realized or remain unresolved in today's society?

---

## 12.8 SUGGESTED READINGS

---

### Primary Source:

1. Wollstonecraft, Mary. "A Vindication of the Rights of Woman: with Strictures on Political and Moral Subjects." Edited by Carol H. Poston, Penguin Classics, 2004.

### Secondary Sources:

1. Taylor, Barbara. "Mary Wollstonecraft and the Feminist Imagination." Cambridge University Press, 2003.
2. Todd, Janet, editor. "The Cambridge Companion to Mary Wollstonecraft." Cambridge University Press, 2002.
3. Kelly, Gary. "Revolutionary Feminism: The Mind and Career of Mary Wollstonecraft." St. Martin's Press, 1992.
4. Tomalin, Claire. "The Life and Death of Mary Wollstonecraft." Penguin Books, 1992.
5. Poovey, Mary. "The Proper Lady and the Woman Writer: Ideology as Style in the Works of Mary Wollstonecraft, Mary Shelley, and Jane Austen." University of Chicago Press, 1984.
6. Mellor, Anne K. "Mary Shelley: Her Life, Her Fiction, Her Monsters." Routledge, 1988.

7. Johnson, Claudia L. "Equivocal Beings: Politics, Gender, and Sentimentality in the 1790s." University of Chicago Press, 1995.
8. Hays, J. A., editor. "Critical Essays on Mary Wollstonecraft." G. K. Hall & Co., 1986.
9. Sunstein, Emily W. "A Different Face: The Life of Mary Wollstonecraft." HarperCollins, 1975.
10. Dixon, Philip. "The British Enlightenment and the Challenge of Feminism." Sussex Academic Press, 2003.

**:: STRUCTURE ::**

- 13.1 Objectives**
- 13.2 Introduction to Matthew Arnold**
  - 13.2.1 Early Life and Education**
  - 13.2.2 Personal and Professional Life**
  - 13.2.3 Arnold's Poetic Career**
  - 13.2.4 Arnold as a Critic**
- 13.3 Historical and Literary Background of the Age**
- 13.4 Works of Matthew Arnold**
  - 13.4.1 Poetry**
    - 13.4.1.1 Early Poetry**
    - 13.4.1.2 Mature Works**
  - 13.4.2 Prose and Criticism**
    - 13.4.2.1 Essays in Criticism**
    - 13.4.2.2 Culture and Anarchy**
    - 13.4.2.3 The Study of Poetry**
  - 13.4.3 Educational Reports**
- 13.5 Summary and Overview of the Text: The Function of Criticism at the Present Time**
- 13.6 Detailed Analysis of The Function of Criticism at the Present Time**
  - 13.6.1 Definition of Criticism**
  - 13.6.2 The Role of the Critic**
  - 13.6.3 The Power of Man and the Power of the Moment**
  - 13.6.7 Criticism as a Creative Force**
  - 13.6.8 The Touchstone Method**
- 13.7 Conclusion**

---

## 13.1 OBJECTIVES

---

In this unit, we will:

1. Familiarise ourselves with Matthew Arnold and his works.
2. Understand the historical and literary background of the Victorian era.
3. Discuss the overview of the text *The Function of Criticism at the Present Time*.
4. Analyse the text from various contexts.

---

## 13.2 INTRODUCTION TO MATTHEW ARNOLD

---

Matthew Arnold (1822–1888) occupies a central position in Victorian literature as both a poet and a critic who helped redefine the aims and methods of literary criticism. He lived at a time when England was undergoing rapid social and intellectual change—industrial growth, expanding education, scientific discoveries, and religious doubt were reshaping public life. Arnold’s writings respond to these changes by repeatedly asking what role literature, education, and culture should play in preserving intellectual seriousness and moral balance. Because he connects literature with the larger life of the mind in society, Arnold’s work is often studied not only as literary criticism but also as cultural criticism.

Arnold’s formative years placed him in a strong educational and moral tradition. The influence of his father, Dr Thomas Arnold of Rugby, gave him early exposure to disciplined learning, ethical seriousness, and the belief that education shapes character. At Oxford, Arnold developed a lasting interest in classical literature and European intellectual traditions, which later informed both his poetic style and his critical standards. His admiration for balance, clarity, and “the best that has been thought and said” reflects this training. At the same time, Arnold was deeply aware of the modern crisis of faith and meaning. In his poetry and prose alike, he addresses tensions between traditional beliefs and modern uncertainty, as well as the need for intellectual and cultural guidance in a changing world.

Arnold’s professional life also shaped his critical outlook. As a school inspector, he travelled widely and observed the practical realities of education across England and Europe. This experience made his cultural arguments concrete: he did not write as a purely academic critic, but as a public intellectual concerned with national life, public institutions, and the general quality of thought. He came to believe that a society’s cultural strength depends on education, disciplined reading, and serious engagement with ideas, rather than on material progress alone. For this reason, his prose often moves between literature, education policy, religion, and social criticism.

In literary criticism, Arnold is significant for insisting that criticism must rise above personal preference and party spirit. He argues for “disinterestedness”—the critic’s commitment to fairness, intellectual honesty, and openness to the best ideas wherever they appear. In “The Function of Criticism at the Present Time”, he presents criticism as a necessary cultural



activity that helps society see clearly, disseminate the best thought, and create an intellectual climate in which creative work can flourish. Arnold's influence is long-lasting because he gives criticism a distinct cultural responsibility: it should refine standards, resist narrowness, and keep public discussion connected to serious ideas.

### **13.2.1 Early Life and Education**

Matthew Arnold was born on 24 December 1822 in Laleham, Middlesex, England, into a distinguished family. His father, Thomas Arnold, was the celebrated headmaster of Rugby School, known for his significant contributions to educational reform. This intellectual environment profoundly influenced Matthew, instilling in him a love of learning and culture.

Arnold received his early education at Rugby School, where his father's principles emphasised discipline, morality, and intellectual growth. In 1841, he went on to study at Balliol College, Oxford, one of the most prestigious institutions of higher learning in England. At Oxford, Arnold's poetic talents blossomed. He won the Newdigate Prize in 1843 for his poem *Cromwell*, marking the beginning of his literary journey.

### **13.2.2 Personal and Professional Life**

After graduating from Oxford in 1844, Arnold worked as a private secretary to Lord Lansdowne, a prominent politician. This position exposed him to the workings of British society and politics. In 1851, Arnold married Frances Lucy Wightman and took on the role of a school inspector to provide financial stability for his family. This job involved extensive travel across England and Europe, where he studied and reported on educational systems, making significant contributions to the field.

Despite his demanding profession, Arnold wrote prolifically, producing works of poetry, prose, and criticism that left a lasting impact on Victorian literature. His writings reflect a deep concern for cultural, intellectual, and social issues, and they demonstrate his belief in the transformative power of ideas.

### **13.2.3 Arnold's Poetic Career**

Matthew Arnold's poetry reflects the intellectual and emotional struggles of the Victorian era. As a poet, Arnold often grappled with themes of spiritual uncertainty, melancholy, and the search for meaning in an age of rapid industrial and scientific change. His poems convey a sense of loss, particularly the erosion of faith and traditional values in a world increasingly shaped by modernity. *Dover Beach*, one of his most celebrated works, poignantly captures this mood, portraying the "Sea of Faith" as retreating and leaving behind a world of confusion and doubt. Arnold's poetry frequently explores the tension between the past and the present and expresses a longing for the simplicity and spiritual clarity of earlier times.

Though Arnold criticised the emotional excess of Romanticism, his poetry is often infused with a romantic yearning for ideals and for a connection with nature. His lyrical works, such as *The Scholar-Gypsy* and *Thyrsis*, evoke the beauty of the English countryside while exploring aspiration and nostalgia. Arnold's classical influence is evident in his pursuit of balance, unity, and universality, yet his verse often remains personal and introspective, revealing inner conflict. Despite criticisms that his poetry lacks the vitality of some

contemporaries, Arnold's work remains significant for its intellectual depth and its engagement with the spiritual and existential questions of his time.

#### **13.2.4 Arnold as a Critic**

Matthew Arnold is frequently described as the first “modern critic” because he gives criticism a clear method, a public purpose, and a disciplined intellectual tone. In place of impressionistic reviewing or partisan judgement, Arnold insists on standards grounded in careful thinking and wide cultural reference. His criticism links literary evaluation with larger questions about the intellectual and moral condition of society. His work is not limited to judging poems or authors; it also examines the quality of ideas circulating in an age and the ways those ideas shape reading, taste, and public life.

In “The Function of Criticism at the Present Time” (1865), Arnold defines criticism as an active search for truth through the circulation of “the best ideas”. For Arnold, criticism is not mainly a matter of delivering verdicts—praising one writer and dismissing another. Its deeper task is to discover significant thought wherever it appears and make it available to the wider culture. He argues that a society's creative life depends on the strength of its intellectual atmosphere: when ideas are shallow, confused, or narrowly local, creative work also tends to be limited. Criticism, therefore, must widen the mind of the age by encouraging informed discussion, clearer standards, and serious engagement with literature and thought.

Central to Arnold's critical philosophy is the principle of “disinterestedness”. By this he means that the critic should aim at fairness and intellectual honesty, putting aside private preferences, party loyalties, and the pressure of popular opinion. He also warns against historical prejudice: the tendency to worship the past simply because it is past, or to reject it because it is old. A critic should approach works and ideas with disciplined attention, judging them by their inherent quality rather than by personal attachment or inherited bias. “Disinterestedness” does not imply coldness or a lack of values; it implies a commitment to truth-seeking, where judgement is based on knowledge, comparison, and reasoned evaluation.

By combining cultural analysis with this demand for impartiality, Arnold helped set a new model for criticism—one in which the critic becomes a serious intellectual figure rather than a mere reviewer. His approach shaped later academic criticism by emphasising standards, method, and the critic's responsibility to keep the life of ideas active, coherent, and focused on what is genuinely excellent.

#### **❖ Check Your Progress – 1**

##### **A. Multiple Choice Questions (Choose the correct answer)**

1. Matthew Arnold was born in: a) Liverpool b) London c) Laleham d) Cambridge
2. Matthew Arnold's father was: a) Lord Lansdowne b) Thomas Arnold c) T. S. Eliot d) Ruskin
3. Arnold studied at: a) Trinity College, Cambridge b) Balliol College, Oxford c) King's College, London d) University of Edinburgh

4. Arnold won the Newdigate Prize in 1843 for: a) *Dover Beach* b) *Cromwell* c) *Thyrsis* d) *Merope*
5. Arnold's profession that involved travel and educational observation was: a) Publisher b) School inspector c) Barrister d) Novelist
6. "The Function of Criticism at the Present Time" was published in: a) 1843 b) 1852 c) 1865 d) 1880
7. Arnold's principle of impartial judgement is called: a) Sensibility b) Disinterestedness c) Romanticism d) Realism
8. The poem that portrays the retreat of the "Sea of Faith" is: a) *The Scholar-Gypsy* b) *Dover Beach* c) *Merope* d) *Cromwell*
9. Arnold is often called the first "modern critic" because he emphasised: a) Humour and satire b) Purely personal taste c) Objectivity and cultural purpose d) Political propaganda
10. Arnold's criticism generally connects literature to: a) War and diplomacy b) Cultural and moral life c) Mathematics d) Trade and commerce

#### **B. Fill in the blanks**

1. Matthew Arnold was born on \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Arnold studied at \_\_\_\_\_ College, Oxford.
3. Arnold worked as a school \_\_\_\_\_ to support his family.
4. The phrase "Sea of Faith" appears in \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Arnold's key critical principle is called "\_\_\_\_\_".

#### **C. Answer in 4–5 lines**

1. How did Thomas Arnold influence Matthew Arnold's intellectual development?
2. Why is Arnold often described as a "modern critic"?
3. What is meant by "disinterestedness" in Arnold's criticism?

---

### **13.3 HISTORICAL AND LITERARY BACKGROUND OF THE AGE**

---

Arnold lived in the Victorian era, a period of profound social, economic, and cultural transformation in England. The Industrial Revolution brought significant changes, leading to urbanisation, technological advancement, and shifts in social structures. These changes created both opportunities and challenges, as traditional values clashed with modern ideas.

The Victorian era was also marked by debates on religion, morality, and aesthetics. The decline of religious authority, coupled with scientific discoveries such as Darwin's theory of evolution, led to widespread questioning of traditional beliefs. In literature, this period saw tension between Romantic ideals and emerging realism, as writers grappled with the complexities of modern life.

Amid this backdrop, Arnold emerged as a voice advocating intellectual clarity and cultural refinement. He believed literature and criticism had a vital role to play in addressing the challenges of the age. For Arnold, criticism was not merely a tool for evaluating art but a means of guiding society towards moral and intellectual excellence.

Arnold's vision for criticism was shaped by the intellectual currents of his time. The rise of German philosophy, the study of classical literature, and growing interest in comparative literature all influenced his thinking. He saw criticism as a bridge between past and present, helping to integrate the best ideas from different cultures and historical periods into contemporary thought.

---

## **13.4 WORKS OF MATTHEW ARNOLD**

---

In the following section, we discuss Arnold's works.

### **13.4.1 Poetry**

Arnold began his literary career as a poet, and his poetry reflects inner struggle, Romantic nostalgia, and philosophical reflection. While much of his verse does not meet the strict classical standards he later advocated, it offers insight into his personal and intellectual life.

#### **13.4.1.1 Early Poetry**

Arnold's first volume of poetry, *The Strayed Reveller, and Other Poems* (1849), introduced themes of melancholy and introspection, which became hallmarks of his style. This collection was followed by *Empedocles on Etna, and Other Poems* (1852), which explored existential and philosophical dilemmas. The dramatic poem *Empedocles on Etna* reflects Arnold's concern with human suffering and the search for meaning, although he later excluded it from subsequent editions, considering it too static and unresolvable.

#### **13.4.1.2 Mature Works**

Arnold's later poetry, such as *Dover Beach* and *The Scholar-Gypsy*, is celebrated for lyrical beauty and reflective tone. *Dover Beach* captures the spiritual uncertainty of the Victorian age, expressing a sense of loss amid scientific and social change. In contrast, *The Scholar-Gypsy* evokes nostalgia for an idealised past, portraying a yearning for simplicity and purpose.

Other notable works include *Merope* (1858), a classical tragedy, and *New Poems* (1867), which contains some of his finest compositions. Arnold's poetry, though sometimes criticised for sentimentalism, remains valued for emotional depth and philosophical insight.

### **13.4.2 Prose and Criticism**

Arnold's contributions to prose and criticism are arguably his most enduring legacy. His essays demonstrate a commitment to intellectual rigour, cultural analysis, and the pursuit of truth.

#### **13.4.2.1 Essays in Criticism**

Matthew Arnold's *Essays in Criticism* (1865) is often treated as a turning point in English literary criticism because it offers a clear account of what criticism is for and what standards it should follow. Arnold does not see criticism as a marginal activity that merely comments on creative writing after the "real" work has been done. Instead, he argues that criticism belongs to the

central intellectual work of society because it organises knowledge, refines judgement, and helps build a shared sense of what is valuable in literature and thought. In these essays, Arnold moves between detailed literary discussion and wider cultural analysis, showing how reading and evaluation are connected with the moral and intellectual condition of an age.

A major statement of his position appears in “The Function of Criticism at the Present Time”. Here Arnold insists that criticism should not be reduced to routine evaluation—simple praise and blame, competitive ranking of authors, or the defence of personal preferences. Such “judicial” criticism, in his view, is too narrow and often becomes partisan or fashionable. Arnold argues that criticism has a larger responsibility: it must seek out “the best ideas” available in an age and bring them into active circulation. The critic’s work therefore involves identifying what is intellectually significant, clarifying it through careful explanation, and enabling readers to engage with it seriously. In this way, criticism becomes a shaping power because it influences what society values, discusses, and learns from.

Arnold also argues that strong creative work does not appear in isolation. He believes it requires an intellectual atmosphere rich in ideas, informed standards, and serious discussion. Criticism helps create this atmosphere by widening the range of reference beyond local habits and narrow national pride. It encourages broader comparison of literatures and traditions and invites readers to test their assumptions against wider European culture. For Arnold, the critic’s task is therefore preparatory as well as evaluative: criticism creates the conditions in which literature can be understood with depth and in which new writing can develop in a more mature cultural climate.

To perform this role, Arnold stresses objectivity and intellectual openness. The critic must resist “party spirit”, private bias, and the pressure of popular opinion, and must approach texts with discipline, patience, and curiosity. Objectivity does not mean the critic has no values; it means judgement is grounded in knowledge, comparison, and fairness rather than self-interest. At the same time, Arnold emphasises the importance of spreading ideas—making major works, critical concepts, and intellectual movements accessible through lucid prose and careful argument. In *Essays in Criticism*, Arnold presents criticism as a serious cultural practice that links literary study with the larger life of ideas.

#### **13.4.2.2 Culture and Anarchy**

In *Culture and Anarchy* (1869), Matthew Arnold offers a wide-ranging critique of the social, moral, and intellectual life of Victorian England. He is concerned that rapid industrial growth, political conflict, and increasing emphasis on material success have weakened shared standards of thought and conduct. Arnold describes this condition as “anarchy”, not simply meaning open disorder, but a deeper absence of guiding ideas and disciplined public judgement.

To explain the divisions of society, Arnold uses three class labels. The “Barbarians” represent the aristocracy, whom he associates with tradition, manners, and social prestige, but also with limited intellectual seriousness. The “Philistines” represent the middle class, whom he views as energetic and practical, yet often narrow, self-satisfied, and overly focused on wealth, work,

and respectability. The “Populace” refers to the working class, who, in Arnold’s account, suffer hardship and lack of opportunity, and may be driven towards resentment or unrest when excluded from education and cultural resources. These terms are not neutral sociological categories; they are Arnold’s critical tools for exposing what he sees as the blind spots and weaknesses within each group.

Against these tendencies, Arnold advocates “culture”, defined as the pursuit of “the best that has been thought and said in the world”. Culture, for him, is a disciplined search for intellectual and moral improvement, rooted in education, self-knowledge, and openness to ideas beyond one’s class habits. He presents culture as a corrective to narrowness and as a path towards social harmony because it encourages reason, balance, and a common standard of values in public life.

#### **13.4.2.3 *The Study of Poetry***

Published in 1880, Matthew Arnold’s essay *The Study of Poetry* develops his influential claim that poetry will increasingly serve functions once performed by religion. Arnold argues that, as traditional religious belief weakens in modern society, people will still need a source of moral and spiritual orientation. He suggests that great poetry can meet this need because it preserves enduring insights into human life, suffering, conduct, and aspiration. For Arnold, poetry is not merely entertainment or verbal ornament; at its highest level it carries “a criticism of life” and helps readers sustain values and meaning.

Within this argument, Arnold proposes the “touchstone method” as a practical way of judging poetic excellence. He recommends comparing doubtful or newly praised poems with short passages from writers whose greatness is already secure. Such touchstones provide a standard against which the quality of thought, feeling, and expression can be tested, helping criticism avoid inflated reputations and temporary fashions.

Arnold also stresses “high seriousness” as a key mark of great poetry. By this he means a gravity of purpose and depth of vision—poetry that speaks with intellectual and emotional weight, not merely charm or cleverness. This emphasis reflects Arnold’s belief that literature carries moral responsibility: the greatest poems do not simply please the reader; they illuminate experience and help form judgement about life.

#### **13.4.3 Educational Reports**

Matthew Arnold’s work as a school inspector gave him a practical platform to influence public education in England. Unlike critics who worked only in universities or literary circles, Arnold travelled widely, observed classrooms, and studied how schooling functioned at a national level. As part of this work, he produced detailed reports on European systems, especially those of France and Germany. He was interested in how these countries organised state-supported education, trained teachers, and built structures that encouraged disciplined learning and cultural formation.

Arnold’s comparative approach mattered because he treated education as more than basic instruction. He linked it with intellectual development, civic responsibility, and the shaping of national culture. By describing European practices and assessing their strengths, he offered English policymakers

concrete examples of what could be adopted or adapted at home. His reports are notable for their clear, controlled, and persuasive style: they combine observation with argument, and they reflect his belief that education should widen the mind and connect learners to the best ideas and traditions. In this way, Arnold's educational writing supports his larger commitment to cultural exchange and serious intellectual life.

### ❖ Check Your Progress – 2

#### A. Match the following

A	B
a) <i>Dover Beach</i>	iii) Spiritual uncertainty and loss
b) <i>Essays in Criticism</i>	iv) Defines criticism as a cultural activity
c) <i>Culture and Anarchy</i>	i) Critique of Victorian social structure
d) <i>The Study of Poetry</i>	ii) Touchstone method and evaluation of poetry
e) Educational Reports	v) Observations on schooling in England and Europe

#### B. True or False

1. True
2. False
3. True
4. True
5. False

#### C. Answer in 3–4 lines

1. Mention two major social/intellectual features of the Victorian age.
2. State Arnold's definition of "culture" in *Culture and Anarchy*.
3. What is the purpose of the touchstone method?

---

### 13.5 SUMMARY AND OVERVIEW OF THE TEXT: *THE FUNCTION OF CRITICISM AT THE PRESENT TIME*

---

Arnold, in his essay "The Function of Criticism at the Present Time", discusses the importance of criticism and its role in society. He argues that criticism is not an afterthought or a lesser activity compared with the creation of art or literature. Instead, he sees it as vital to cultural and intellectual progress. Arnold defines criticism as the act of looking at things honestly and sharing the best ideas with the world. For him, criticism improves understanding and helps create an environment where great ideas and creativity can flourish.

Arnold explains that criticism has three main functions. First, a critic should aim to “see things as they really are”. This means being fair and honest when evaluating art or ideas. Critics should not let personal opinions or inherited traditions cloud judgement. Criticism must be free from bias if it is to understand and evaluate its subject properly.

Second, Arnold argues that criticism should spread the best ideas to others. Criticism should not remain private; it should help society grow. Critics should share insights that help people understand and appreciate the best that has been thought and created. For Arnold, criticism is not mainly about pointing out faults; it is about bringing valuable ideas into clearer view and encouraging better thinking.

Third, criticism helps create conditions in which creativity can thrive. Arnold believes that, by spreading good ideas and encouraging thoughtfulness, criticism builds an environment where writers, artists, and thinkers can do their best work. In this way, criticism does not only evaluate what already exists; it also prepares the ground for future achievement.

Arnold rejects the claim that criticism is less important than creative work. He argues that criticism has its own kind of creative power because it clears the way for great ideas and supports future work. Critics therefore play an important role in shaping culture, guiding society towards higher goals, and encouraging intellectual growth. For Arnold, criticism is not about tearing down; it is about building a better intellectual life by connecting the best ideas of the past with the needs of the present.

---

## **13.6 DETAILED ANALYSIS OF THE FUNCTION OF CRITICISM AT THE PRESENT TIME**

---

### **13.6.1 Definition of Criticism**

Matthew Arnold defines criticism as a “disinterested endeavour”, meaning that it should be guided by an honest search for truth rather than personal advantage, party spirit, or narrow loyalties. For Arnold, the critic must practise impartial judgement and resist forms of prejudice that distort evaluation. He identifies two major dangers.

First is historical prejudice: an excessive reverence for the past that treats earlier periods as automatically superior and dismisses present needs and questions. Arnold does not reject tradition; rather, he warns that blind attachment to the past can prevent a critic from seeing what is genuinely significant in the contemporary world.

Second is personal prejudice: the critic’s private tastes, emotional attachments, and subjective likes or dislikes. Arnold argues that criticism loses seriousness when it becomes merely the expression of individual preference. A critic must therefore discipline personal responses and aim for fairness and intellectual clarity.

Arnold’s ideal critic maintains a balance: respect for tradition and the ability to recognise present relevance. In this role, the critic becomes a mediator, bringing the best ideas from different times and cultures into living contact



with the present. Criticism, for Arnold, is an active cultural work—evaluative, clarifying, and intellectually responsible.

### **13.6.2 The Role of the Critic**

Matthew Arnold assigns a serious cultural responsibility to the critic. For him, criticism is not casual opinion or fault-finding; it is a disciplined activity that connects learning with public life. The critic must function as both scholar and guide, combining knowledge, judgement, and a sense of intellectual duty. Arnold's critic does not simply follow popular taste; instead, the critic tests ideas, resists easy assumptions, and helps society recognise what is truly valuable in literature and thought.

First, learning is the critic's foundation. Arnold insists that the critic must study the object carefully and honestly, striving to see it "as it truly is". This requires wide reading, attention to language and context, and a readiness to revise one's opinions when evidence demands it. In Arnold's view, a critic must be trained by the best literature and the best thinking, because serious judgement depends on serious preparation.

Second, teaching follows from learning. Arnold believes criticism has a public function: it should communicate insights and circulate knowledge so that society can come into contact with the best ideas, rather than remain limited by prejudice or narrow habits. Teaching here does not mean moral preaching; it means explaining, interpreting, and making great works and ideas intelligible to readers.

Third, the critic has the task of inspiring creativity. Arnold argues that criticism helps create an intellectual climate in which creative writers can develop. By clarifying standards, raising the level of discussion, and keeping important ideas alive, criticism prepares the ground for strong artistic work. When criticism performs this role well, it does not compete with creativity; it supports it by enriching the cultural atmosphere.

Arnold also stresses that criticism must challenge complacency and stimulate intellectual growth. If great ideas are not actively shared and debated, society may drift into cultural stagnation, confusion, or even "anarchy". Therefore, the critic's role is ultimately corrective and constructive: to keep culture thoughtful, standards high, and intellectual life active.

### **13.6.3 The Power of Man and the Power of the Moment**

Matthew Arnold explains the making of great literature through two connected forces: the "power of man" and the "power of the moment". By the "power of man" he means the writer's personal capacity—talent, imagination, intelligence, and artistic discipline. By the "power of the moment" Arnold refers to the larger conditions of an age: its intellectual activity, cultural inheritance, and the general level of ideas available to writers and readers.

Arnold uses major writers to show how these forces work together. Goethe, in Arnold's account, benefits from a rich European cultural tradition and a developed intellectual climate that supports and deepens his work. Shakespeare, although a unique genius, is also shaped by the extraordinary vitality of the Elizabethan period, when theatre, language, and public life created favourable conditions for dramatic greatness. Arnold's point is not to reduce art to history, but to insist that lasting literature normally requires both:

rare individual gifts and an age capable of nourishing and receiving those gifts.

### 13.6.7 Criticism as a Creative Force

Matthew Arnold treats criticism not as a secondary activity that merely comments on “real” art, but as an intellectually serious and, in its own way, creative practice. For Arnold, criticism involves mental energy, disciplined judgement, and imaginative insight. A critic does more than summarise or praise; the critic examines ideas, clarifies standards, and brings neglected truths into view. In this sense, criticism becomes a constructive force: it produces understanding, refines taste, and creates a climate in which genuine art and thought can flourish.

Arnold insists that critical work can offer its own kind of satisfaction. Although criticism may not create poems or novels, it can generate a distinct form of pleasure—the pleasure of grasping ideas, testing them, and communicating them with precision. The critic’s “creation” lies in the formation and circulation of clear, well-judged ideas, which can shape how society reads, thinks, and evaluates culture.

Arnold also challenges the belief—expressed by poets such as Wordsworth—that criticism is a distraction from true artistic labour. Against this view, Arnold argues that criticism has a necessary cultural function. It prepares the intellectual ground on which creative work can be received and understood. By questioning shallow opinions, resisting mere popularity, and insisting on high standards, criticism helps build the intellectual foundations of society. For Arnold, criticism is not wasted effort; it is a vital activity that supports culture by making thought more exact, values more serious, and judgement more responsible.

### 13.6.8 The Touchstone Method

Matthew Arnold presents the “touchstone method” in *The Study of Poetry* (1880) as a comparative procedure for literary evaluation. Instead of judging poems through changing personal taste or contemporary reputation, Arnold proposes that the critic should use brief touchstone passages taken from poets whose excellence is firmly established. The central act of criticism, in this method, is to place a poem (or a passage from it) alongside these recognised examples and examine whether it can sustain the comparison in quality and effect (Arnold, *The Study of Poetry*, 1880).

Arnold links the touchstone method to the defining features of major poetry. He argues that the highest poetry is marked by “high truth” and “high seriousness” (Arnold, *The Study of Poetry*, 1880). These phrases point to poetry that carries intellectual depth and moral or emotional weight, and that continues to matter beyond its immediate historical moment. The critic therefore uses the touchstones not simply to rank poems, but to check whether the poem under review possesses sustained significance comparable to the best-known models.

Critics of Arnold often describe this method as a canon-based practice of evaluation. M. H. Abrams explains that Arnold recommends assessing a poem by comparison with “short passages from acknowledged poetic masterpieces”

(Abrams, *A Glossary of Literary Terms*). Seen in these terms, the touchstone method is Arnold's attempt to ground criticism in comparative reading, using selected examples of established excellence as a standard of judgement.

### ❖ Check Your Progress – 3

#### A. Answer in 4–5 lines

1. How does Arnold define criticism in “The Function of Criticism at the Present Time”?
2. What are historical prejudice and personal prejudice?
3. Explain the “power of man” and the “power of the moment”.

#### B. Answer in detail

1. Discuss the three functions of criticism as explained by Arnold.
2. Explain why Arnold calls criticism a creative force.
3. Describe the touchstone method and its value in literary evaluation.

---

## 13.7 CONCLUSION

---

In this unit, we explored the life and contributions of Matthew Arnold, one of the most significant literary figures of the Victorian era. We examined how his upbringing, education at Rugby School and Oxford, and his professional career as a school inspector shaped his intellectual pursuits. Arnold's works reflect his deep concern for culture, intellect, and the moral responsibilities of both artists and critics.

We also considered the historical and literary context of the Victorian period, marked by industrialisation, scientific advancement, and shifting social values. Amid these changes, Arnold's advocacy of intellectual rigour and cultural refinement positioned him as a guiding voice. His poetry, such as *Dover Beach* and *The Scholar-Gypsy*, captures the spiritual and emotional struggles of his time, while his critical works, including *Essays in Criticism* and *Culture and Anarchy*, underline his belief in the transformative power of criticism.

We then analysed “The Function of Criticism at the Present Time”, where Arnold defines criticism as a “disinterested endeavour” with the roles of seeing things as they are, disseminating the best ideas, and fostering creativity. Arnold's vision of criticism as an essential and creative process highlights its importance in shaping society and culture. His legacy endures as a pioneer of modern criticism, reminding readers of the value of objectivity and intellectual growth in literature and life.

### ❖ Answers

#### Answers: Check Your Progress – 1

MCQs: 1) c 2) b 3) b 4) b 5) b 6) c 7) b 8) b 9) c 10) b

#### Fill in the blanks:

1. 24 December 1822
2. Balliol
3. inspector
4. *Dover Beach*

5. disinterestedness

**Short answers (indicative points):**

1. Thomas Arnold shaped Arnold's disciplined outlook through education, morality, and intellectual seriousness at Rugby. His influence encouraged Arnold's belief that education and culture form character and society.
2. Arnold is called a modern critic because he insists on method, standards, and cultural purpose rather than impressionistic judgement. He links criticism with the circulation of ideas and the moral-intellectual life of society.
3. "Disinterestedness" means impartial and fair judgement free from personal bias, party spirit, and narrow loyalties. It requires intellectual honesty and openness to the best ideas.

**Answers: Check Your Progress – 2**

**3–4 lines (indicative points):**

1. The Industrial Revolution and urbanisation changed social life; scientific developments challenged religious certainty and traditional beliefs.
2. Culture is the pursuit of "the best that has been thought and said in the world", aimed at intellectual and moral improvement beyond class narrowness.
3. The touchstone method evaluates poetry by comparing it with brief passages from acknowledged masterpieces, reducing the influence of fashion and personal taste.

**Answers: Check Your Progress – 3**

**4–5 lines (indicative points):**

1. Arnold defines criticism as a disinterested endeavour to see things as they are and to circulate the best ideas. It is truth-seeking and culturally necessary.
2. Historical prejudice is blind reverence for the past; personal prejudice is judgement based on private likes and dislikes. Both reduce fairness and clarity.
3. The power of man is the writer's talent and discipline; the power of the moment is the intellectual and cultural climate of an age. Great literature usually needs both.

**Detailed (indicative points):**

1. Functions: (i) seeing things as they really are (objectivity), (ii) disseminating the best ideas, and (iii) creating an intellectual climate favourable to creativity.
2. Criticism is creative because it clarifies ideas, refines standards, and shapes cultural judgement, preparing conditions in which strong literature and thought can develop.

3. Touchstone method: compare poems with established lines from great poets to test whether a poem can sustain comparison in truth, seriousness, and expression.

❖ **Suggested Readings**

1. Arnold, Matthew. *Essays in Criticism*. Macmillan, 1865.
2. Arnold, Matthew. *Culture and Anarchy*. Smith, Elder & Co., 1869.
3. Arnold, Matthew. "The Study of Poetry." 1880.
4. Abrams, M. H., and Geoffrey Galt Harpham. *A Glossary of Literary Terms*. (Relevant entries on Arnold, criticism, and touchstone method.)
5. Eliot, T. S. "The Function of Criticism." (For comparison.)

❖ **Works Cited**

- Arnold, Matthew. *Culture and Anarchy*. Smith, Elder & Co., 1869.
- Arnold, Matthew. *Essays in Criticism*. Macmillan, 1865.
- Arnold, Matthew. "The Study of Poetry." 1880.
- Abrams, M. H., and Geoffrey Galt Harpham. *A Glossary of Literary Terms*.
- (Edition as prescribed by your syllabus.) Eliot, T. S. "The Function of Criticism."

**:: STRUCTURE ::**

- 14.0 Objectives**
- 14.1 Biographical overview of Walter Pater**
- 14.2 Aesthetic movement**
- 14.3 Pater's literary works**
- 14.4 Cultural context**
- 14.5 Legacy**
- 14.6 Illustrative quotes and passages**
- 14.7 Let us sum up**
- 14.8 Keywords**
- 14.9 Check your progress**
- 14.10 Suggested reading**

---

**14.0 OBJECTIVES**

---

The present chapter will try to:

- Explore the biographical details of Walter Pater, including his early life, education, and formative influences.
- Define the key principles and tenets of the Aesthetic Movement in literature, art, and culture.
- Conduct a detailed analysis of Pater's major literary works, such as "Studies in the History of the Renaissance" and "Marius the Epicurean."
- Understand Pater's aesthetic philosophy, including the concept of "art for art's sake."
- Investigate the broader cultural and social context of the late 19th century, considering the impact of industrialization and changing societal values.
- Evaluate the influence of Pater's ideas on later writers, artists, and thinkers.
- Identify and analyse specific quotes and passages from Pater's works that exemplify his aesthetic philosophy.

---

## 14.1 BIOGRAPHICAL OVERVIEW OF WALTER PATER

---

Walter Pater was born on August 4, 1839, in Shadwell, London, into a middle-class family. He was a leading figure in the Aesthetic Movement of the late 19th century. Intellectual curiosity and a natural talent for education were traits of his early existence. Though his early years are poorly understood, the Victorian era—a time of profound social, cultural, and industrial change—had a profound impact on him. Pater attended King's School in Canterbury before attending The Queen's College in Oxford for his academic training. In 1858, Pater was awarded a scholarship to Oxford. His academic interests extended beyond classical studies; he became very interested in art history and philosophy, which predicted the interdisciplinary style of his later works.

In 1864, Pater was confirmed as a fellow of Oxford's Brasenose College, further cementing his standing in academia. His academic pursuits and teaching had a long-lasting effect, and he gained recognition for his perceptive talks on Greek literature and philosophy. Pater became a mentor to a generation of students who would go on to influence culture, so his impact went beyond the classroom. Pater's personal life changed significantly during this time, despite his academic success. His decision to convert to Roman Catholicism in 1865 as a result of a spiritual crisis would have a lasting impact on his writings and worldview. One of the recurrent themes in Pater's writings was the conflict between his religious beliefs and intellectual interests.

After the release of his seminal essay collection "Studies in the History of the Renaissance" in 1873, Walter Pater's literary career took off. Often referred to as simply "The Renaissance," this anthology presented Pater's unique aesthetic theory and prose style to a wider readership. The writings explored Renaissance philosophy, art, and culture, highlighting the value of personal sensibility and the aesthetic experience. Pater's aesthetic vision was developed in his later works, such as the philosophical novel "Marius the Epicurean" (1885) and other essays. The protagonist of *Marius the Epicurean* navigated life's complexity in search of beauty and enjoyment, examining the conflict between idealism and pragmatism. Pater's philosophical investigations gained a poetic quality from his writing.

Pater played a significant role in the Aesthetic Movement, which promoted "art for art's sake" and aimed to elevate beauty and sensory experience in both life and art. Beyond the written word, Pater made a significant contribution to this movement with his ideas that impacted other writers, artists, and intellectuals in the cultural milieu of the period. His status as a cultural hero was further cemented by his connections to individuals such as Oscar Wilde and his influence on the Decadent movement. Pater's theories were not without debate, though. Moralists who considered his ideology hedonistic criticized him for emphasizing pleasure and personal experience. One of the fundamental themes of Pater's life and work was the careful balance between hedonism and intellectual pursuits, between the moral and the beautiful.

Walter Pater's life was tragically cut short on July 30, 1894, when he passed away at the age of 54 from pneumonia. In spite of his brief life, Pater left behind a lasting intellectual legacy. His views on art, beauty, and the pursuit of pleasure for its own sake continued to be influential to modernist writers and academics well into the 20th century. The life story of Walter Pater is one of academic brilliance, inquisitiveness, and a fervent quest of aesthetic standards.

His contributions to the Aesthetic Movement and the late 19th-century cultural landscape have had a lasting impact on the annals of art and literature. Pater is a key character in the Victorian intellectual scene because of his investigation of the conflict between pleasure and morality, personal experience and society norms, which still has resonance with readers and academics today.

---

## 14.2 AESTHETIC MOVEMENT

---

The goal of the Aesthetic Movement, a late 19th-century artistic and cultural movement, was to reject Victorian conventions and celebrate beauty, art, and sensuality for their own sake. The Aesthetic Movement marked a change in the perception of art's function and social role by advocating for "art for art's sake," in opposition to the moralistic and utilitarian values of the day.

In the midst of profound social, economic, and cultural shifts, the Aesthetic Movement emerged. Cities had changed as a result of the Industrial Revolution, and the growing middle class wanted to claim its cultural identity. In opposition to the apparent dehumanization caused by machinery, a desire for a more sophisticated, artistic way of living evolved against the backdrop of industrialization. The idea that aesthetics, creativity, and sensory experience should be valued for their own sake was central to the Aesthetic Movement. Proponents including Walter Pater, James McNeill Whistler, and Oscar Wilde rejected the idea that art should be used for didactic or moral objectives, arguing that the pursuit of beauty was a worthwhile undertaking in and of itself.

The Aesthetic Movement's guiding principles were outlined by Walter Pater, a prominent figure in the movement, in his collection of essays "Studies in the History of the Renaissance." In order to find joy and beauty in the sensory diversity of life, Pater exhorted readers to embrace the aesthetic experience. His hedonistic ideology placed a strong emphasis on the value of personal experience and accepted the pursuit of pleasure as a normal part of life. Oscar Wilde, another well-known Aesthetic Movement advocate, supported the notion that life and art might coexist together. His clever essays and plays, like "The Picture of Dorian Gray," praised the unrestrained quest of beauty. Wilde's well-known quote, "I can resist anything except temptation," perfectly captures the spirit of the movement.

James McNeill Whistler made important contributions to the visual arts. His "Whistler's Mother" picture and his well-known nocturne series highlighted the beauty that can be found in ordinary, daily scenes. Whistler was a supporter of "art for art's sake," which holds that aesthetic qualities alone should elicit feelings from viewers rather than moral or narrative purposes. Lifestyle choices and decorative arts were also impacted by the Aesthetic Movement. The movement's emphasis on aesthetic expression and beauty had an impact on fashion, interior design, and personal aesthetics. Extensive, intricate patterns and exotic influences became fashionable in the home as a result of the need for an aesthetically pleasant setting.

The Aesthetic Movement was praised by the intellectual elite and bohemians, but traditionalists criticized it for being decadent and unconnected to society's principles. Its supporters faced criticism for their perceived lack of moral



responsibility and self-indulgence. Still, the Aesthetic Movement made a significant impact. The growth of Art Nouveau, a movement that embraced organic forms and ornamental embellishments, is evidence of its influence. Furthermore, the tenets of "art for art's sake" are still relevant in contemporary debates concerning the significance of aesthetic experiences and the inherent worth of art.

In 19th-century culture, the Aesthetic Movement was a rebellious and transformational movement that questioned Victorian conventions and promoted the pursuit of beauty free from moral or practical restraints. Its influence can be seen in literature, visual arts, and larger cultural movements that are leading to a society that is more aesthetically aware and pleasurable. The Aesthetic Movement is still evidence of the persistent human search for innovation, beauty, and the appreciation of the sensory richness of life.

The Aesthetic Movement, which aimed to redefine the purpose of art and appreciate beauty for its own sake, emerged in the late 19th century amid a period of cultural and creative upheaval. Walter Pater was at the center of this movement, and his literary works and aesthetic philosophy had a significant influence on the prevailing mindset of the time. Curiously, there is still room for scholarly investigation and critical examination on the relationship between Walter Pater, the Aesthetic Movement, and the idea of decadence. Leading the Aesthetic Movement was Oxford academic and literary critic Walter Pater, whose seminal essay collection "Studies in the History of the Renaissance" (1873) made him a prominent figure. Pater's aesthetic theory was centered on the notion of "art for art's sake," which exhorted people to look for joy and beauty in everything in their lives. His elaborate and vivid prose brought the senses to the forefront of understanding existence and art.

The Aesthetic Movement, which included people like Oscar Wilde and James McNeill Whistler, adopted Pater's ideas and worked to reshape society expectations for both art and living. The Aesthetic Movement championed the pursuit of beauty, highlighting personal sensibility and pleasure as valid goals, and rejected the idea that art should have moral or practical ends. Alongside the Aesthetic Movement, the idea of decadence surfaced as a cultural critique that questioned accepted social mores and conventions. Decadence was frequently portrayed in literature and art as a state of moral degradation, excess indulgence, and rejection of conventional virtues. The Aesthetic Movement and decadence were not mutually exclusive, but they did have a subtle link characterized by overlapping themes of hedonism, aesthetic emphasis, and criticism of social limitations.

Scholarly disagreement surrounds Walter Pater's ambiguous position in relation to decadence and the Aesthetic Movement. Although Pater's emphasis on pleasure, personal experience, and the search of beauty complemented decadent themes, his work was made more complex by his philosophical insights and subtle prose. Pater's writing alluded to a delicate conflict between hedonism and intellectual pursuits rather than openly embracing the decadent critique of society standards. Pater's beliefs influenced Oscar Wilde, a contemporary of his who played a major role in the Aesthetic Movement and decadence. Wilde's famous line, "We can forgive a man for making a useful thing as long as he does not admire it. The only excuse for making a useless

thing is that one admires it intensely," resonates with Pater's celebration of the useless beauty found in art.

A long-lasting legacy has been left by the relationship between Walter Pater, the Aesthetic Movement, and the idea of decadence. According to contemporary views, Pater was a figure of transition, straddling the line between the complications of decadence and the aspirations of the Aesthetic Movement. Later writers, including the Decadent movement of the late 19th century and the aestheticism of the early 20th century, were influenced by him. The relationship among Walter Pater, the Aesthetic Movement, and decadence illustrates the complex interactions of concepts during a time of creative and cultural change. Both movements found resonance in Pater's embrace of beauty, personal experience, and pleasure, which aided in the nuanced examination of opulent subjects. The uncertainties surrounding Pater's stance deepen our comprehension of his literary and philosophical contributions, providing a rich legacy that fascinates both academics and readers.

---

### **14.3 PATER'S LITERARY WORKS**

---

The writings of British writer, literary critic, and academic Walter Pater (1839–1894) have had a significant influence on aestheticism and the study of literature and the arts. Originating from Shadwell, London, Pater's scholarly endeavors and literary contributions are frequently linked to the Aesthetic Movement of the late 1800s, a cultural and artistic movement that underscored the significance of "art for art's sake." Mostly concentrating on criticism and essays, Pater's literary career is well recognized for his essay collection "The Renaissance." When "The Renaissance" was published in 1873, it represented a dramatic break from the conventions of Victorian criticism by presenting a fresh perspective that emphasized the sensual and beautiful elements of both art and life. In this seminal work, Pater delves into the concept of "art for art's sake," contending that the aesthetic experience is the pinnacle of human communication.

Pater believed that there was only one reality that mattered, the "immediate present," which is one of the major ideas of his philosophy. He advised readers to become fully present in the here and now and to view life and art with an acute awareness. Pater attempted to communicate the sensory and emotional influence of art, which is why his prose is marked by its poetic and contemplative elements. Pater examined the lives and creations of a number of Renaissance painters in "The Renaissance," including Michelangelo, Botticelli, and Leonardo da Vinci. Instead of giving traditional biographical information, Pater concentrated on the personal experience of coming into contact with art and the transformational potential it possesses.

Beyond criticism and literature, Pater's ideas influenced a generation of artists and authors, such as Oscar Wilde and the decadent movement. Pater's emphasis on the aesthetic experience and the pursuit of beauty as an end in and of itself was greatly appreciated by Wilde in particular. Pater's influence can be seen in Wilde's plays and essays, where the rejection of moralizing limitations and the search for beauty are major topics. Pater's theories generated debate even though they were novel and significant. Some accused him for emphasizing aestheticism and the pursuit of pleasure at the expense of

moral and ethical considerations. More conservative detractors who upheld conventional Victorian values also opposed Pater's work.

Pater authored multiple works besides "The Renaissance," such as "Appreciations" (1889) and "Studies in the History of the Renaissance" (1873). His aesthetic perspective was further explored in these books, which also looked at the lives and creations of other writers and artists. Walter Pater's significant influence on the development of literary criticism and the Aesthetic Movement is his literary legacy. His emphasis on the value of the moment, the search for beauty, and the elevation of the aesthetic above the didactic and moral aspects of art subverted Victorian conventions and cleared the way for a more open-minded and individualized approach to literature and aesthetics. Pater's theories are still relevant today, influencing conversations about beauty, art, and the nature of the aesthetic experience.

Encapsulating the principles of the Aesthetic Movement and providing a deep investigation of philosophical subjects, Walter Pater's novel *Marius the Epicurean* stands out among other works of fiction from the 19th century. Published in 1885, this book is frequently cited as a model for the aesthetic novel genre because it skillfully combines philosophy, language, and a detailed account of the protagonist's artistic development. Fundamentally, *Marius the Epicurean* embodies the ideas of the Aesthetic Movement, a phenomena in art and culture that aimed to elevate the pursuit of pleasure and beauty for their own sake. With the Roman Empire as its backdrop during the Antonine era, Pater's work offers a rich historical canvas on which to examine the complexity of aesthetics, philosophy, and personal experience.

Marius, the main character, personifies the artistic principles supported by Pater and the artistic Movement. Marius aims to develop a sophisticated awareness for the sensory and aesthetic components of life, from his early interest with the beauty of pagan ceremonies to his later immersion in the artistic and intellectual circles of Rome. Marius starts to live by the pursuit of pleasure—not in the hedonistic sense, but rather as an appreciation of beauty. *Marius the Epicurean* is a philosophical book that explores the conflict between idealism and pragmatism, going beyond its aesthetic aspects. Marius struggles with issues of responsibility, faith, and living a true life. The investigation of other philosophical systems, such as Epicureanism and Stoicism, is facilitated by Pater's story, which reflects the intellectual turbulence of the late 19th century.

The novel emphasizes how important aesthetic experience is. Pater encourages readers to view the world through the prism of aesthetic consciousness through Marius's experiences with art, his reflections on nature, or his reflective musings. Scenes like Marius's encounter with Praxiteles's statues or his reflection on a stunning sunset serve as prime examples of Pater's belief in the transformational potential of beauty. *Marius the Epicurean* is classified as an aesthetic novel in large part because of Pater's writing style. The language is rich, elaborate, and full of vivid details. Every scene is expertly designed to arouse the senses, weaving together a rich tapestry of sights, sounds, and feelings.

The subject that runs throughout Marius's voyage is the blending of art and life, which is central to the aesthetic novel. Sculpture, music, and writing, among other artistic manifestations, serve as a channel for Marius's aesthetic

education. Pater blurs the lines between the process of creating art and living, arguing that a life lived with an appreciation for beauty is in and of itself a type of artistry. Additionally, *Marius the Epicurean* offers a nuanced critique of the late 19th-century cultural landscape. The conflict Pater saw between personal aesthetics and religious dogma is reflected in the novel; this issue struck a chord with discussions of faith and reason at the time. Friedrich Nietzsche's ideas—particularly the idea of the *Übermensch*—have a strong influence on the novel's examination of individuality and the search for selfhood.

As a classic aesthetic fiction that embodies the principles of the Aesthetic Movement and offers a thorough examination of philosophical subjects, *Marius the Epicurean* is unmatched. Walter Pater creates a story that honors the search for beauty, the intricacies of aesthetic awareness, and the fusion of art and life via the character of Marius. The novel invites readers into a universe where the pursuit of aesthetic pleasure becomes a noble and transformational quest, and its elaborate prose, philosophical profundity, and societal critique all add to its enduring significance as a work that transcends literary genres.

---

#### 14.4 CULTURAL CONTEXT

---

Prominent in the intellectual scene of late 19th-century England, Walter Pater used his pen with a revolutionary force that both resonated with and questioned Victorian England's dominant cultural standards. Pater performed a subtle but deep cultural alchemy in his writings and books, imbuing his concepts with a unique fusion of individualism, aestheticism, and the pursuit of intellectual and sensuous pleasure. The Aesthetic Movement, a popular movement that aimed to give priority to beauty and sensory experience in both art and life, resonated with Pater's ideals. The traditional Victorian emphasis on moral instruction in art was rejected by the movement, which favored "art for art's sake."

Pater's opposition to the then-dominant moralism was at the core of his resonance with the Aesthetic Movement. Victorian culture, which was characterized by rigid moral standards and a utilitarian philosophy, frequently saw art as a means of moral education. But Pater pushed back against such utilitarian ideas, defending the pursuit of pleasure and the inherent worth of beauty. His essay collection "Studies in the History of the Renaissance" (1873) challenged the conventional wisdom that art should be didactic in nature and ended up becoming a type of manifesto. Pater's thoughts also struck a chord with the newfound individualism. In a time of swift industrialization and social transformation, Pater defended the right of the individual to have a distinct and private aesthetic sensibility.

Writings by Pater gently questioned Victorian England's dominant religious orthodoxy. His intellectual identity gained nuance upon his conversion to Roman Catholicism in 1865. Although Pater accepted aspects of Catholic aesthetics and liturgy, his methods were frequently more humanistic and secular. His thoughts were made more inflammatory by the conflict between his Catholic religion and his celebration of the sensual and worldly, which went against the religious conventions of the day. Pater was also in close contact with the Decadent movement, which arose in the later half of the 1800s, because of the Aesthetic Movement's resonances. Pater's emphasis on

the pursuit of pleasure and his sophisticated examination of sensuous experiences resonated with Decadence.

Walter Pater's theories have a long-lasting effect on society. Not only did his contemporaries respond favorably to his appeal for the pursuit of beauty, the celebration of the individual, and the rejection of rigid moralism, but so did other generations. The works of authors and artists who embraced aestheticism and aimed to free art from the constraints of didacticism bear Pater's influence. Walter Pater's views were a startling dissonance as well as a resonating melody in the complex fabric of Victorian civilization. Pater's celebration of individual experience and beauty resonated with the Aesthetic Movement and challenged conventional conventions by presenting a nuanced investigation of pleasure, emphasizing personal sensibility, and rejecting moralism.

The views of Walter Pater have a long-lasting effect on culture. His appeal for the pursuit of beauty, the honoring of the unique person, and the rejection of dogmatic moralism struck a chord with both his contemporaries and later generations. The writings and artistic creations of those who embraced aestheticism and aimed to free art from the constraints of didacticism bear Pater's influence. Walter Pater's concepts served as both a startling dissonance and a resonating melody in the complex fabric of Victorian culture. Resonating with the Aesthetic Movement, Pater's rejection of moralism, emphasis on human sensibility, and introduction of a nuanced investigation of pleasure challenged conventional cultural standards through his embrace of beauty and individual experience.

---

## 14.5 LEGACY

---

The great aestheticist of the 19th century, Walter Pater, made a lasting impression on society by sharing his views with a wide range of subsequent authors, painters, and intellectuals. Through the halls of cultural and creative thinking, Pater's appreciation of beauty for its own sake, his emphasis on the individual's pursuit of pleasure, and his subtle examination of aesthetic consciousness have continued to resonate, influencing the sensibilities of succeeding generations. The impact of Walter Pater on literary modernism is significant and varied. The modernist movement derived its foundation from Pater's works, which featured stylized style and an emphasis on subjective experience. Pater's approach to narrative, his focus on the interior lives of individuals, and his investigation of the transient and subjective nature of experience drew the attention of writers like Virginia Woolf and Marcel Proust. Woolf specifically recognized Pater's impact on her own explorations of form and awareness in pieces such as *Mrs. Dalloway*.

Beyond the pages of books, Pater's ideas found their way into the visual arts, inspiring painters like Symbolists and James McNeill Whistler. The idea of "art for art's sake" was reflected in the works of these artists, who aimed to put aesthetics ahead of didactic or moral considerations. Artworks intended to provoke thought and emotion rather than deliver overt statements were motivated by Pater's emphasis on the value of personal sensibility and the search for beauty. Pater's theories have had a lasting impact on philosophical thought that extends beyond the arts. Friedrich Nietzsche and Jean-Paul Sartre were two existentialist philosophers who were interested in Pater's investigation of individualism and the search for genuine experience. Pater's

thoughtful analysis of the nuances of pleasure, morality, and existence struck a chord with existentialists' concerns about personal autonomy and the pursuit of meaning.

Pater had an impact on later literary movements through his affiliation with the Decadent and Aesthetic movements. Pater's exaltation of hedonism and aestheticism served as a source of inspiration for the decadent writers of the late 19th and early 20th centuries, such as Oscar Wilde. Furthermore, Pater's investigation of the darker and more enigmatic facets of life was discovered to have parallels in the writings of authors such as the French Symbolist poets and American poet Edgar Allan Poe. Pater's theories have been re-examined and reworked in the field of culture and gender studies. The effects of Pater's aesthetic theory on gender norms and the portrayal of women have been studied by feminist academics. Discussions concerning gender dynamics in the context of aestheticism have been sparked by Pater's depiction of the feminine in his works, which has been closely examined for any possible implications on the objectification or empowerment of women.

Pater's influence can be seen in literary theory and criticism as well. His essay "Conclusion to 'Marius the Epicurean'" has become a seminal work in conversations on the interplay of critics, artists, and audiences. In the course of continuous discussions over the nature of literary criticism, poststructuralist and postmodernist critics have interacted with Pater's theories regarding the subjectivity of interpretation and the elusive nature of meaning. Despite having its origins in the Victorian era, Walter Pater's concepts are timeless and have a lasting impact on a variety of creative and intellectual pursuits. The everlasting appeal of Pater's aesthetic philosophy is highlighted by the enduring resonance of his appreciation of individual experience, beauty, and the pursuit of pleasure. His thoughts have stood the test of time, inspiring new generations to reflect on the transformational potential of art, the complexity of life, and the never-ending search for the sublime. Walter Pater's legacy as an aesthetic consciousness icon is still evidence of the lasting power of concepts that outlive the constraints of historical context.

---

## 14.6 ILLUSTRATIVE QUOTES AND PASSAGES

---

From "Studies in the History of the Renaissance" (1873): - "To burn always with this hard, gem-like flame, to maintain this ecstasy, is success in life."

From "Conclusion" to "The Renaissance" (1873): - "Not the fruit of experience, but experience itself, is the end. A counted number of pulses only is given to us of a variegated, dramatic life."

From "Marius the Epicurean" (1885): - "We are all under sentence of death, but with a sort of indefinite reprieve."

From "Marius the Epicurean" (1885): - "For the only cure of this sort of grief is to have a great affection for something else, instead of a weak affection for self."

From "Marius the Epicurean" (1885): - "To love anything is to hope in it."

From "The Renaissance: Studies in Art and Poetry" (1873): - "All art constantly aspires towards the condition of music."

From "The Renaissance: Studies in Art and Poetry" (1873): - "To see the object as in itself it really is, has been justly said to be the aim of all true criticism whatever, and in aesthetic criticism the first step towards seeing one's object as it really is, is to know one's own impression as it really is, to discriminate it, to realize it distinctly."

From "The Renaissance: Studies in Art and Poetry" (1873): - "It is the addition of strangeness to beauty that constitutes the romantic character in art, and the desire of beauty is at its height when the beauty is difficult to come at, and the distance is what one may call romantic distance."

From "Appreciations, with an Essay on Style" (1889): - "Not the fruit of experience, but experience itself is the end."

From "Appreciations, with an Essay on Style" (1889): - "Art comes to you proposing frankly to give nothing but the highest quality to your moments as they pass, and simply for those moments' sake."

---

## 14.7 LET US SUM UP

---

In the framework of the Aesthetic Movement, the present chapter examines the life, beliefs, and impact of well-known English writer and critic Walter Pater from the 19th century. Pater played a crucial role in this creative and cultural movement that aimed to give importance to individuality, beauty, and the pursuit of pleasure in both art and life. The chapter probably goes into Pater's biography, his aesthetics, which emphasizes "art for art's sake," and his oeuvre, which includes "Studies in the History of the Renaissance" and *Marius the Epicurean*. It might also go over Pater's unique writing style and his relationships to other Aesthetic Movement leaders, looking at how his concepts both supported and contradicted the Victorian era's dominant cultural standards. In general, the chapter probably gives a thorough summary of Walter Pater's Aesthetic Movement achievements and his enduring influence on literature and aesthetics.

---

## 14.8 KEYWORDS

---

<b>Aesthetic</b>	Pertaining to beauty, artistic expression, or the appreciation of beauty for its own sake.
<b>Alchemy</b>	The medieval and early modern pseudoscience that aimed to transform base metals into gold and discover the elixir of life; metaphorically, a magical or transformative process.
<b>Art Nouveau</b>	An artistic and design movement in the late 19th and early 20th centuries characterized by elaborate, ornamental forms inspired by natural elements.
<b>Bohemians</b>	Individuals who lead unconventional, often artistic, and nonconformist lifestyles, often associated with the pursuit of creativity and freedom from societal norms.
<b>Chord</b>	In a musical context, a combination of three or more musical tones sounded simultaneously; metaphorically, a harmonious or resonant combination.

<b>Decadence</b>	A cultural, artistic, or moral decline or deterioration, often characterized by excess, self-indulgence, and a rejection of traditional values.
<b>Didacticism</b>	The practice of conveying moral or educational lessons through literature, art, or other forms of expression.
<b>Dissonance</b>	In music, a lack of harmony or a combination of tones that produces tension; metaphorically, a lack of agreement or harmony in ideas or concepts.
<b>Dogmatic</b>	Adhering rigidly to a set of principles or beliefs without flexibility or openness to change.
<b>Ecstasy</b>	Intense joy, delight, or rapture; a state of heightened emotional or spiritual experience.
<b>Existentialism</b>	A philosophical movement emphasizing individual existence, freedom, and choice, often exploring the subjective experience of existence.
<b>Hedonism</b>	The pursuit of pleasure and sensual gratification as the highest good or the guiding principle of life.
<b>Nuances</b>	Subtle variations or distinctions in meaning, expression, or tone; small details or differences.
<b>Orthodoxy</b>	Adherence to established and traditional beliefs or practices, especially in religious or cultural contexts.
<b>Pragmatism</b>	A philosophical approach that emphasizes practical consequences and the utility of ideas; the evaluation of beliefs and actions based on their real-world effectiveness.
<b>Renaissance</b>	A period of cultural, artistic, and intellectual revival in Europe, typically spanning the 14th to the 17th century.
<b>Reprieve</b>	A temporary relief or postponement, often used in the context of a delay in a negative or challenging situation.
<b>Resonate</b>	To evoke a positive response or connection; to have a lasting impact or influence.
<b>Seminal</b>	Highly influential, serving as a seed or source for future developments.
<b>Subtle</b>	Delicate, not immediately obvious or noticeable; requiring careful attention or close observation.
<b>Utilitarian</b>	Relating to the belief that actions and decisions should be practical and useful, aiming to achieve the greatest overall benefit.
<b>Variegated</b>	Having different colors, elements, or forms; characterized by diversity and variety.



## ❖ CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Choose the correct options:

1. **What is the central theme of Walter Pater's work "Studies in the History of the Renaissance"?**
  - a. Industrialization and modernity
  - b. Aesthetic philosophy**
  - c. Social justice
  - d. Scientific progress
2. **Which movement is Walter Pater closely associated with?**
  - a. Romanticism
  - b. Realism
  - c. Naturalism
  - d. Aesthetic Movement**
3. **What is the concept of "art for art's sake" associated with in the context of Walter Pater's philosophy?**
  - a. Art as a commodity
  - b. Art for commercial success
  - c. Art as a means of social commentary
  - d. Art pursued for its own intrinsic value**
4. **Which university was Walter Pater associated with during his academic career?**
  - a. Cambridge University
  - b. Harvard University
  - c. Oxford University**
  - d. Yale University
5. **What literary form is "Marius the Epicurean," one of Walter Pater's significant works?**
  - a. Novel**
  - b. Play
  - c. Epic poem
  - d. Essay
6. **Which prominent figure of the Aesthetic Movement was contemporaneous with Walter Pater?**
  - a. Charles Dickens
  - b. Charlotte Brontë

- c. **Oscar Wilde**
  - d. George Eliot
7. **In the context of Walter Pater, what does the term "aesthetic experience" refer to?**
- a. Emotional intensity in literature
  - b. Objective analysis of art
  - c. **Sensory and emotional engagement with beauty**
  - d. Social commentary in art
8. **What is the primary focus of the Aesthetic Movement in art and literature?**
- a. Social realism
  - b. Political activism
  - c. **Pursuit of beauty and aesthetic pleasure**
  - d. Moral instruction
9. **Which work by Walter Pater is considered a philosophical novel exploring the conflict between idealism and practicality?**
- a. "Studies in the History of the Renaissance"
  - b. **"Marius the Epicurean"**
  - c. "The Renaissance of Venus"
  - d. "Imaginary Portraits"
10. **What term is often used to describe the literary philosophy advocated by Walter Pater and other members of the Aesthetic Movement?**
- a. Realism
  - b. Symbolism
  - c. **Decadence**
  - d. Naturalism
11. **Which of the following statements best captures Walter Pater's stance on the pursuit of knowledge and experience?**
- a. Knowledge for its utilitarian value
  - b. Knowledge for moral instruction
  - c. **Knowledge for its own sake and aesthetic experience**
  - d. Knowledge for societal progress
12. **What term is often used to describe Walter Pater's distinctive prose style, characterized by its rich and evocative language?**
- a. Utilitarian
  - b. **Aestheticism**

- c. Ornate
- d. Spartan

13. In the Aesthetic Movement, what role does individual experience play in the appreciation of art and beauty?
- a. It is irrelevant.
  - b. It is the sole criterion for evaluating art.**
  - c. It should be guided by societal norms.
  - d. It depends on the artist's intention.
14. Which of Walter Pater's essays explores the concept of the "Conclusion" and the idea of living intensely in the present?
- a. "Studies in the History of the Renaissance"
  - b. "The Renaissance of Venus"
  - c. "The Aesthetic Movement and Its Critics"
  - d. "Conclusion to 'Marius the Epicurean'"**
15. What is the significance of the phrase "artifice over nature" in the context of the Aesthetic Movement?
- a. Advocating for the dominance of technology in art
  - b. Prioritizing artistic skill over natural talent
  - c. Emphasizing the artificial and stylized in art**
  - d. Promoting the imitation of natural landscapes in art

❖ **Answer in brief:**

- Where was Walter Pater born, and what were the key influences on his early life?
- Summarize Walter Pater's concept of "art for art's sake" and its significance.
- Provide a brief overview of "Studies in the History of the Renaissance" and its main themes.
- Describe Walter Pater's prose style and its characteristics.
- What are the key principles of the Aesthetic Movement, and how does Pater align with them?
- How did the broader cultural and social context of the late 19th century influence Pater's ideas?
- Identify the lasting impact of Walter Pater's ideas on later writers, artists, and thinkers.

**Write a detailed answer on the following questions:**

- 1) Explore Walter Pater's concept of "art for art's sake" and its implications for the Aesthetic Movement.
- 2) Discuss the role of individual experience in Walter Pater's aesthetic philosophy.
- 3) Analyse the distinctive prose style of Walter Pater, considering its characteristics and its effectiveness in conveying aesthetic experiences.
- 4) Examine "Marius the Epicurean" as a novel within the context of the Aesthetic Movement.
- 5) Investigate how the broader cultural and social context of the late 19th century influenced Walter Pater's ideas and the Aesthetic Movement.
- 6) Explore the connection between Walter Pater, the Aesthetic Movement, and the concept of decadence.
- 7) Assess the lasting impact of Walter Pater's ideas on subsequent writers, artists, and thinkers.
- 8) Discuss the influence of the Aesthetic Movement on various art forms beyond literature, such as painting and architecture.

---

**14.10 SUGGESTED READING**

---

- *Aesthetic Movement: Including Late Nineteenth Century Design*. Christie's, 2002.
- Aslin, Elizabeth. *The Aesthetic Movement: Prelude to Art Nouveau*. Ferndale Editions, 1981.
- Buckler, William E. *Walter Pater: The Critic as Artist of Ideas*. New York University Press, 1987.
- Buckler, William E. *Walter Pater: The Critic as Artist of Ideas*. New York University Press, 1987.
- Chai, Leon. *Aestheticism: The Religion of Art in Post-Romantic Literature*. Columbia University Press, 1990.
- Johnson, R. V. *Aestheticism*. Routledge, 2017.
- Lambourne, Lionel. *The Aesthetic Movement*. Phaidon, 2011.
- Pater, Walter, and Philip Dodd. *Walter Pater: An Imaginative Sense of Fact*. Cass, 1981.
- Spencer, Robin. *The Aesthetic Movement: Theory and Practice*. Studio Vista, 1972.

**:: STRUCTURE ::**

- 15.1 Objectives**
- 15.2 Background**
- 15.3 Introduction**
- 15.4 About T. S. Eliot**
- 15.5 “Tradition and the Individual Talent”: The Essay in Three Parts**
  - 15.5.1 Part I: The Concept of Tradition**
    - 15.5.1.1 Eliot on the Term “Tradition”**
    - 15.5.1.2 Historical Sense**
    - 15.5.1.3 Past and Present**
    - 15.5.1.4 Ideal Order**
  - 15.5.2 Part II: Theory of Impersonal Poetry and Depersonalisation**
    - 15.5.2.1 The Theory of Impersonality**
    - 15.5.2.2 The Catalyst Analogy**
    - 15.5.2.3 Depersonalisation**
    - 15.5.2.4 Modernism and the Rejection of Romantic Self-Expression**
  - 15.5.3 Part III: Conclusion (Eliot’s Critical Position)**
- 15.6 Let Us Sum Up**
- 15.7 Keywords**
  - ❖ **Check Your Progress**
- 15.8 Books Suggested**

---

**15.1 OBJECTIVES**

---

One of the greatest English critics of the twentieth century, Eliot’s criticism marks a total break from nineteenth-century traditions and gives direction to literary criticism. This unit aims to discuss how poems should be written and how they should be read and appreciated by critics (from T. S. Eliot’s point of view). This essay is divided into three parts: first, the concept of “Tradition”;

then the theory of impersonal poetry; and finally, the conclusion. This unit will present T. S. Eliot's views on historical sense, the concept of tradition, the theory of impersonal poetry, and depersonalisation.

---

## 15.2 BACKGROUND

---

T. S. Eliot's essay "Tradition and the Individual Talent", published in *After Strange Gods*, maintains that tradition is not solely the maintenance of certain dogmatic beliefs. On the contrary, these beliefs have taken their living form in the course of a tradition. Eliot suggests that a sense of tradition is necessary because it enables us to realise our kinship with "the same people living in the same place". Nevertheless, at the same time, we are instructed to bear in mind that the prevailing condition of life that produced a particular tradition is not something immovable, but rather something that constantly grows and becomes different from what it was previously.

---

## 15.3 INTRODUCTION

---

T. S. Eliot's best-known essay, "Tradition and the Individual Talent", was first published in 1919 and later included in *The Sacred Wood: Essays on Poetry and Criticism* (1920). Eliot attempts to do two things in this essay. First, he redefines "tradition" by emphasising the importance of history in writing and understanding poetry. Second, he argues that poetry should be fundamentally "impersonal", that is, independent of and distinct from the personality of its writer, by highlighting the significance of history in producing and comprehending poetry.

Eliot's concept of tradition is intricate and distinctive, incorporating what he calls "the historical sense", which is a sense of both the pastness of the past and the presence of the past. Eliot saw earlier works of art as forming an order or "tradition", but this tradition is constantly changed by a new work that alters the tradition to create room for it. According to this viewpoint, "the past should be altered by the present as much as the past directs the present."

One of Eliot's most well-known and controversial points is that, in order to gain this consciousness of the past, a poet must practise a kind of "self-sacrifice". Once this awareness is attained, it removes traces of personality from the poem because the poet becomes merely a vehicle for expression. A "mature" poet's mind functions as a passive receptacle of ideas, words, and feelings that are joined, under intense concentration, into a new "art emotion." Eliot compares this to a chemical reaction. Eliot believed that true art is the outcome of a capacity for synthesis and combination, a capacity that comes from in-depth study and broad knowledge. In Eliot's view, true art has nothing to do with the artist's personal life.

---

## 15.4 ABOUT T. S. ELIOT

---

T. S. Eliot, who won the Nobel Prize in Literature in 1948, is renowned as a poet, literary critic, playwright, editor, and publisher. Thomas Stearns Eliot, born in 1888 in St Louis in the United States, was descended from a family that had long resided at East Coker in Somerset, from where, in 1670, his Puritan ancestors emigrated to Massachusetts. He was educated at Harvard, Paris, and Oxford. *The Waste Land* (1922), *Four Quartets* (1943), and the play *Murder in the Cathedral* are among Eliot's best-known works. Eliot's accolades include the British Order of Merit and the Nobel Prize for

Literature. The Tony Award for Best Play in 1950 went to his play *The Cocktail Party*.

T. S. Eliot acquired British citizenship in 1927. He married Vivienne Haigh-Wood (Vivienne Eliot), his first wife, in 1915. It has been suggested that Eliot's dark masterpiece, *The Waste Land*, was influenced by the strain of the marriage. Unfortunately, Vivienne suffered from mental illness after 1933, and the two lived apart until she died in 1947. Eliot married Esmé Valerie Fletcher (Valerie Eliot), his secretary at Faber & Faber, in 1957, when he was 68 years old. She was nearly 40 years younger than he was. Until her death in 2012 at the age of 86, Valerie Eliot safeguarded her husband's literary legacy.

Eliot's poetic career can be roughly divided into periods. The first includes early poems such as "The Love Song of J. Alfred Prufrock", written in 1911 and published in *Poetry* magazine, along with other poems important in the history of modern literature. The second spans the time he spent studying and living between Boston, Paris, and London, and culminated in *The Waste Land* in 1922. This period was contemporaneous with the First World War and with the financial and marital strain of Eliot's early years in London.

The third period was written at the time of Eliot's anxiety over the Great Depression and the rise of Nazism, and it culminated in 1943 with the publication of *Four Quartets*. Only a few exercises published in school publications came before the poems of the first period. However, in 1910 and 1911, he composed poems that presented themes that, with modification and development, he returned to repeatedly: "Portrait of a Lady", "Preludes", "Rhapsody on a Windy Night", and "The Love Song of J. Alfred Prufrock". Through the first decade of the 1920s, literature took centre stage in Eliot's life and creative output.

The quatrains in Eliot's subsequent collection of poems were influenced by Ezra Pound in both form and substance. Eliot died in 1965.

---

## **15.5 "TRADITION AND THE INDIVIDUAL TALENT": THE ESSAY IN THREE PARTS**

---

Because it covers all of Eliot's critical tenets, the essay "Tradition and the Individual Talent" can be seen as an unofficial manifesto of Eliot's critical faith. Thus, "Tradition and the Individual Talent" is divided into three parts:

- Part I: The Concept of Tradition
- Part II: Theory of Impersonal Poetry and Depersonalisation
- Part III: Conclusion

Eliot describes himself as "a classicist in literature, an Anglo-Catholic in religion, and a royalist in politics". "Tradition and the Individual Talent" was first published (anonymously) in *The Egoist* in 1919. In this essay, Eliot argues that tradition can aid emerging writers in becoming contemporary. One of the fundamental paradoxes of Eliot's writing—and, in fact, of much modernism—is that it frequently looks backwards, even more sharply and explicitly than earlier poets did, in order to move forward.

## 15.5.1 Part I: The Concept of Tradition

### 15.5.1.1 Eliot on the Term “Tradition”

According to the *Dictionary of Literary Terms & Literary Theory*, the term “tradition” denotes the inherited past available for the writer to study and learn from. Thus, the writer’s native language, literary forms, codes, devices, conventions, and culture come from the past. All writers begin with some tradition behind them (even if only that provided by their language), and every writer in some way modifies or influences that tradition, even when being imitative. Though Milton might have written some poems that resemble Keats, some poems by Dylan Thomas are almost indistinguishable from the work of G. M. Hopkins.

Thomas Stearns Eliot writes in “Tradition and the Individual Talent”: “In English writing we seldom speak of tradition, though we occasionally apply its name in deploring its absence. We cannot refer to ‘the tradition’ or to ‘a tradition’; at most, we employ the adjective in saying that the poetry of So-and-so is ‘traditional’ or even ‘too traditional.’ Certainly, the word is not likely to appear in our appreciations of living or dead writers. Every nation, every race has not only its own creative, but its own critical mind.”

T. S. Eliot claims that the word “tradition” sounds unpleasant to English ears. The most “unique” and “original” features of a poet’s work are those that the English often praise. They believe these are the poet’s main strengths. This excessive emphasis on uniqueness reveals an uncritical mindset, because it gives the poet the wrong kind of adulation. Eliot suggests that, if we approach a poet without prejudice, we may find that the best and most individual parts of the work are those in which the “dead poets”, the poet’s ancestors, assert their immortality most vigorously.

Eliot turns his attention to the importance and value of tradition. In Eliot’s view, tradition does not imply slavish devotion to the practices of the past. That would be mere repetition or imitation. He believes that “novelty is better than repetition.” The poet should have a historical sense: not merely resembling traditional works, but developing awareness and understanding. Shakespeare, for example, may have been traditional when he adopted the revenge theme for *Hamlet* from Thomas Kyd’s *The Spanish Tragedy*. Nevertheless, Shakespeare did not remain a mere imitator; he used his talent and also remained impersonal.

Eliot’s perspective on tradition is important because it rejects the idea that tradition is only reiteration or mindless devotion to long-standing customs. Rather, he contends that tradition is the total body of earlier literary works, which together form a dynamic and interconnected whole. According to Eliot, tradition is constantly changing in response to the creation of new art. He claims that a “simultaneous order” is created in which all literature exists in dialogue, as the relevance and meaning of earlier works are reinterpreted in light of later contributions. Eliot also implies that tradition is not limited to a single period, because the “mind of Europe” functions as a storehouse of outstanding work.

Eliot argues that true artistic achievement requires tradition. In his view, tradition restrains individual inventiveness and keeps artists from giving in to selfishness or solipsism. This perspective contradicts the Romantic ideal of the



artist as a lone genius motivated only by inspiration. Eliot contends that great art emerges when the poet yields to tradition and allows the collective knowledge and methods of predecessors to inform the work. A new work's worth is determined by how it interacts with and modifies the past. Eliot views this interaction as absorption rather than imitation. Tradition is kept alive and relevant through this process, rather than being ossified or rendered outdated.

Eliot's conviction that literature is universal is linked to his idea of tradition. By placing individual works in the larger "mind of Europe", Eliot emphasises how artistic expression is connected across time and cultural boundaries. Critics, however, have argued that Eliot's emphasis on the European canon is exclusive. Even so, his broad principle—that writers engage with a shared literary legacy—can be applied across various traditions.

Eliot's idea of tradition has produced debate. Some argue that it imposes limitations on the artist, while others question whether it favours a narrow canon. Yet the essay remains a key resource for understanding how tradition and innovation interact in literature. Tradition, for Eliot, is not a burden but a source of power and inspiration for the creative mind.

#### **15.5.1.2 Historical Sense**

Tradition is not something that can be inherited. It can be obtained only through hard work. Gaining a historical sense makes a poet traditional. Understanding the past should be more comprehensive than the immediate past, which is insufficient and immature. A poet should be familiar with even the distant past, that is, the literature of "the whole of the literature of Europe." To value a poet, one should compare and contrast the poet with the dead. This is an aesthetic ideal, not merely historical criticism. Eliot suggests that mindless repetition should be avoided.

Eliot views tradition as having greater value because it requires knowing earlier authors and recognising what was beneficial and valuable in the past. Only those with a sense of history can acquire tradition. The historical sense involves a perception "not only of the pastness of the past, but also of its presence. One who has the historical sense feels that the whole of the literature of Europe from Homer down to his own day, including the literature of his own country, forms one continuous 'literary tradition'."

#### **15.5.1.3 Past and Present**

Eliot says the past should be altered by the present as much as the past directs the present. New work will inevitably be judged by the standard of the past—a comparison in which two things are measured by each other. Therefore, the poet must develop a consciousness of the past and continue it throughout the career.

At the beginning of "Tradition and the Individual Talent", Eliot claims that the measure of a poet's talent is how the poet handles a position within the historical framework of literature. The essay argues that the poet should let familiarity with earlier authors influence the writing. A piece of art or literature must be compared with earlier works to be judged. Eliot thinks adding new works to the canon causes tradition to change continuously. The poet must be conscious of both a place in the present and a significance connected to earlier literary works.

#### **15.5.1.4 Ideal Order**

Past works have already formed an “ideal order”. When a new work is added, the order is slightly altered, and then there is conformity between old and new.

### **15.5.2 Part II: Theory of Impersonal Poetry and Depersonalisation**

#### **15.5.2.1 The Theory of Impersonality**

According to the theory of impersonality, the poet can develop tradition and historical sense through objective sensibility, and the poet’s identity and subjectivity become less significant. When the poet excludes personality and feelings from the writing of poetry, the sense of tradition and history deepens.

#### **15.5.2.2 The Catalyst Analogy**

Eliot gives the scientific analogy of a chemical process. In the presence of a catalyst such as platinum, sulphur dioxide and oxygen combine to form sulphurous acid, while the platinum does not change. The theory of impersonal poetry is about the poem’s relation to its author.

The poet’s mind is a medium in which feelings are at liberty to enter new combinations (similar to the metaphysical poets).

**Analogy of the catalyst (catalyst: platinum):** Sulphur dioxide + Oxygen → Sulphurous acid This combination takes place only if platinum is present. The newly formed acid contains no trace of platinum. Platinum remains unaffected, neutral, and unchanged.

#### **15.5.2.3 Depersonalisation**

Catalyst: the mind of the poet Elements: expression (emotions + feelings)

The poet’s mind is a receptacle. It contains many feelings, phrases, and images, stored until they can be combined—a combination of experiences that do not seem like experiences for the ordinary person. According to Eliot, depersonalisation means poetry is not the turning loose of emotion but an escape from emotion. It is not the expression of personality but an escape from personality. Eliot dismisses the Romantic theory of self-expression.

#### **15.5.2.4 Modernism and the Rejection of Romantic Self-Expression**

Modernism, a literary movement characterised by a rejection of the emotional subjectivity promoted by Romantic poets like Wordsworth and Shelley, rose to prominence in the early twentieth century. In reaction to this Romantic heritage, Eliot developed his notion of impersonal poetry, criticising the focus on the poet’s feelings and unique experiences. According to Eliot, such methods result in self-indulgence and a lack of poetic rigour. Rather, he supports an approach in which the poet puts the creative process ahead of personal emotion in order to create art that transcends the individual. Eliot’s impersonal approach is consistent with Modernist values of objectivity, intellectual rigour, and experimentation.

Eliot likens the poet’s mind to a fragment of platinum in a chemical reaction, allowing raw feelings and experiences to be transformed into poetry without the mind being consumed or altered. The poet’s function, in this view, is that of an objective agent rather than a subjective participant. Personal experiences may serve as raw material, but they must be made universal and impersonal through the creative process. Poetry, according to Eliot, is an escape from

emotion rather than a direct portrayal of it. He distinguishes between the emotions expressed in the poem and the poet's own emotions. The poet uses external symbols or situations, rather than direct personal confession, to evoke feelings in the reader through the objective correlative. This approach ensures that the poem's emotions are universal rather than tied to the poet's private life.

Eliot's ideas about tradition are closely related to his philosophy of impersonal poetry. The poet's individuality must be absorbed into a larger literary tradition. Through impersonality, the poet's work becomes connected to broader cultural and historical consciousness. The poet adds to and reshapes tradition rather than trying to display personal individuality. Eliot's claim that "poetry is not the expression of personality, but an escape from personality" shows his belief that the best poetry transcends personal experience in order to achieve universality.

By shifting emphasis from the poet's private expression to the creative process and the work itself, Eliot's theory influenced Modernist criticism and beyond. Although the theory has produced controversy, it has had a significant impact by encouraging poets to move beyond individualism and connect with a shared human and literary inheritance.

### **15.5.3 Part III: Conclusion (Eliot's Critical Position)**

Romantic writers felt that their poetry ought to be intimate and emotional. According to Eliot, poetry involves "escaping from emotion" and "escaping from personality", so that emotion does not run amok and come to an end as it often does in Romantic poetry.

When the poet can remove personal feelings from the writing of poetry, criticism will be directed at the text rather than the author. Eliot proclaims a view of art in which the text has its own life and should be able to live without the presence of the writer.

---

## **15.6 LET US SUM UP**

---

A classic work of literary criticism, "Tradition and the Individual Talent" by T. S. Eliot (1919) questions accepted ideas about poetry, originality, and the poet's duty. The essay, first published in *The Egoist*, embodies Eliot's Modernist philosophy by rethinking the creative process and highlighting the interaction between innovation and tradition. Each of its three sections—the idea of tradition, the importance of individual talent, and the impersonal character of poetic creation—explores a major theme. Together, Eliot's ideas aim to bridge the gap between artistic expression in the present and historical continuity.

Eliot starts the essay by reconsidering tradition, which is often dismissed as a docile and inflexible devotion to the past. According to Eliot, tradition is a dynamic and ever-changing chain of literary works that both influences and is influenced by new works. A poet's work must be assessed within the larger framework of literary history rather than viewed in isolation. Eliot emphasises how the past and present are intertwined.

According to Eliot, a poet needs to be well-versed in the "mind of Europe", which includes everything from Homer to modern literature. With this knowledge, the poet can converse with the past and change tradition while still

drawing inspiration from it. Eliot also presents the notion that tradition is a conscious and critical engagement with the past rather than merely chronological inheritance. A poet must create something original and timely while incorporating the best elements of predecessors. Through this process, tradition remains relevant while accommodating fresh perspectives.

Eliot does not downplay the significance of individual talent, even while insisting that tradition is vital. He contends that the greatest poets blend tradition with a distinctive creative vision. However, Eliot's view departs from the Romantic ideal of poetry as the direct expression of genius or personal emotion. Instead, he emphasises technical proficiency, discipline, and objectivity, through which subjective experience is transformed into universal art. In Eliot's view, a poet becomes significant not by displaying personality but by effacing it, enabling the work to transcend personal subjectivity.

In the third and most important section, Eliot presents his impersonal theory of poetry, which contradicts the Romantic idea of poetry as emotional outpouring. Great poetry, for Eliot, is the result of objective workmanship rather than direct self-expression. The poet's mind, like a chemical catalyst, enables raw feelings and experiences to combine into art without leaving traces of the poet's personality in the poem.

Eliot concludes by emphasising the reciprocal relationship between past and present. A new work, while influenced by tradition, also modifies how the past is understood. He calls this a "simultaneous order", in which each addition to literary tradition reshapes the whole. Tradition provides foundation and continuity; individual talent contributes freshness and originality. Although Eliot's theories have faced criticism—especially for privileging a narrow Western canon and for minimising lived experience—the essay remains influential for its rigorous framework for understanding poetry, tradition, and artistic creation.

In conclusion, T. S. Eliot stresses these points:

- Focus on poetry, not the poet.
- Art is impersonal.
- The poet reaches impersonality by surrendering entirely to the work.
- To surrender, the poet should understand tradition and possess historical sense.

---

## 15.7 KEYWORDS

---

<b>Impersonality</b>	Absence or reduction of concern for individual needs or desires.
<b>Proclaim</b>	Announce officially or publicly.
<b>Catalyst</b>	A substance that increases the rate of a chemical reaction without itself undergoing any permanent chemical change.
<b>Analogy</b>	A comparison between one thing and another, typically for explanation.
<b>Conformity</b>	Behaviour in accordance with socially accepted

	conventions.
<b>Adulation</b>	Excessive admiration or praise.
<b>Anonymously</b>	In a way that prevents a person from being identified by name.
<b>Receptacle</b>	A hollow object used to contain something.
<b>Synthesis</b>	The combination of components or elements to form a connected whole.
<b>Paradox</b>	A seemingly absurd or contradictory statement.

### ❖ Check Your Progress

#### A Fill in the Blanks

Fill in the blanks in the following sentences from the words given below:  
(Three, *Four Quartets*, 1922, 1919, T. S. Eliot, personality and feeling, repetition, Shakespeare, receptacle)

1. Novelty is better than \_\_\_\_\_.
2. When the poet excludes his own \_\_\_\_\_ from the writing of his poetry, he can deepen his sense of tradition and history.
3. T. S. Eliot's best-known essay, "Tradition and the Individual Talent", was first published in \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ won the Nobel Prize in Literature in 1948.
5. "The Waste Land" was published in \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Eliot's anxiety over the Great Depression and the advent of Nazism culminated in 1943 with the release of the \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The poet's mind is a \_\_\_\_\_.
8. "Tradition and the Individual Talent" is divided into \_\_\_\_\_ parts.

#### B Answer in Brief

1. What is depersonalisation?
2. What is an ideal order? Explain it.
3. What is the third part of the essay "Tradition and the Individual Talent"? Discuss it.

#### C Write Short Notes

1. The concept of tradition.
2. Theory of impersonality.
3. T. S. Eliot as a poet and critic.

---

## 15.8 BOOKS SUGGESTED

---

Badenhausen, Richard. *T. S. Eliot and the Art of Collaboration*. Cambridge University Press, 2009.

Beasley, Rebecca. *Theorists of Modernist Poetry: T. S. Eliot, T. E. Hulme, Ezra Pound*. Routledge, 2008.

Cooper, John Xiros. *The Cambridge Introduction to T. S. Eliot*. Cambridge University Press, 2009.

Frye, Northrop. *T. S. Eliot*. Oliver and Boyd, 1968.  
Gallup, Donald Clifford. *T. S. Eliot, a Bibliography: Including Contributions to Periodicals and Foreign Translations*. Hesperides Press, 2006.  
McIntire, Gabrielle. *Modernism, Memory, and Desire: T. S. Eliot and Virginia Woolf*. Cambridge University Press, 2010.

યુનિવર્સિટી ગીત

સ્વાધ્યાય: પરમં તપ:

સ્વાધ્યાય: પરમં તપ:

સ્વાધ્યાય: પરમં તપ:

શિક્ષણ, સંસ્કૃતિ, સદ્ભાવ, દિવ્યબોધનું ધામ  
ડૉ. બાબાસાહેબ આંબેડકર ઓપન યુનિવર્સિટી નામ;  
સૌને સૌની પાંખ મળે, ને સૌને સૌનું આભ,  
દશે દિશામાં સ્મિત વહે હો દશે દિશે શુભ-લાભ.

અભણ રહી અજ્ઞાનના શાને, અંધકારને પીવો ?  
કહે બુદ્ધ આંબેડકર કહે, તું થા તારો દીવો;  
શારદીય અજવાળા પહોંચ્યાં ગુર્જર ગામે ગામ  
ધ્રુવ તારકની જેમ ઝળહળે એકલવ્યની શાન.

સરસ્વતીના મયૂર તમારે ફળિયે આવી ગહેકે  
અંધકારને હડસેલીને ઉજાસના ફૂલ મહેકે;  
બંધન નહીં કો સ્થાન સમયના જવું ન ઘરથી દૂર  
ઘર આવી મા હરે શારદા દૈન્ય તિમિરના પૂર.

સંસ્કારોની સુગંધ મહેકે, મન મંદિરને ધામે  
સુખની ટપાલ પહોંચે સૌને પોતાને સરનામે;  
સમાજ કેરે દરિયે હાંકી શિક્ષણ કેરું વહાણ,  
આવો કરીયે આપણ સૌ  
ભવ્ય રાષ્ટ્ર નિર્માણ...  
દિવ્ય રાષ્ટ્ર નિર્માણ...  
ભવ્ય રાષ્ટ્ર નિર્માણ



**DR. BABASAHEB AMBEDKAR OPEN UNIVERSITY**

(Established by Government of Gujarat)

'Jyotirmay' Parisar,

Sarkhej-Gandhinagar Highway, Chharodi, Ahmedabad-382 481

Website : [www.baou.edu.in](http://www.baou.edu.in)